

PACIFIC LINGUISTICS  
Series D-88

## SAY IT IN SAMOAN

La'i Ulrike Mosel and Ainslie So'o



Department of Linguistics  
Research School of Pacific and Asian Studies  
THE AUSTRALIAN NATIONAL UNIVERSITY

*Pacific Linguistics* specialises in publishing linguistic material relating to languages of East Asia, Southeast Asia and the Pacific. Linguistic and anthropological manuscripts related to other areas, and to general theoretical issues, are also considered on a case by case basis. Manuscripts are published in one of four series:

SERIES A: Occasional Papers

SERIES B: Monographs

SERIES C: Books

SERIES D: Special Publications

FOUNDING EDITOR: S.A. Wurm

EDITORIAL BOARD: M.D. Ross and D.T. Tryon (Managing Editors), T.E. Dutton,  
N.P. Himmelmann, A.K. Pawley

EDITORIAL ADVISERS:

B.W. Bender  
University of Hawaii

David Bradley  
La Trobe University

Michael G. Clyne  
Monash University

S.H. Elbert  
University of Hawaii

K.J. Franklin  
Summer Institute of Linguistics

W.W. Glover  
Summer Institute of Linguistics

G.W. Grace  
University of Hawaii

M.A.K. Halliday  
University of Sydney

E. Haugen  
Harvard University

A. Healey  
Summer Institute of Linguistics

L.A. Hercus  
Australian National University

John Lynch  
University of the South Pacific

K.A. McElhanon  
Summer Institute of Linguistics

H.P. McKaughan  
University of Hawaii

P. Mühlhäusler  
University of Adelaide

G.N. O'Grady  
University of Victoria, B.C.

K.L. Pike  
Summer Institute of Linguistics

E.C. Polomé  
University of Texas

Gillian Sankoff  
University of Pennsylvania

W.A.L. Stokhof  
University of Leiden

B.K. T'sou  
City University of Hong Kong

E.M. Uhlenbeck  
University of Leiden

J.W.M. Verhaar  
University of Leiden

C.L. Voorhoeve  
University of Leiden

The editors are indebted to the Australian National University for assistance in the production of this series.

All correspondence concerning *Pacific Linguistics*, including orders and subscriptions, should be addressed to:

PACIFIC LINGUISTICS  
Department of Linguistics  
Research School of Pacific and Asian Studies  
The Australian National University  
Canberra ACT 0200  
Australia

Copyright © The authors  
Copyedited by Becky Quick  
Proofread by Pam Rosser  
Printed by ANU Printing Services

First published 1997  
Typeset by Jeanette Coombes

Bound by F & M Perfect Bookbinding

This publication was made possible by an initial grant from the Hunter Douglas Fund.  
No royalties are paid on this or any other *Pacific Linguistics* publication.

ISSN 0078-7566

ISBN 0 85883 459 6

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREFACE	viii
ABBREVIATIONS	ix
LESSON 1	1
1.1 The pronunciation of Samoan words	1
1.2 The ‘good’ and the ‘bad’ language	3
1.3 Greetings, farewells and other important, everyday phrases	4
1.4 Exercises	6
LESSON 2	8
2.1 ‘Dance!’ – verb phrases, noun phrases	8
2.2 ‘In’ and ‘to’ – prepositions	9
2.3 ‘What’s your name?’	9
2.4 Useful phrases: <i>Tapena le fale!</i> ‘Tidy up the house!’	10
2.5 Conversation: <i>Tālofa tama’ita’i</i> ‘Greetings, Madam’	11
2.6 Exercises	11
LESSON 3	14
3.1 ‘Jimmy’s car’ – possessive prepositions	14
3.2 <i>’Upu fa’aaloalo</i> ‘Respectful words’	16
3.3 ‘The high chief Seupule’ – titles and names	16
3.4 Useful phrases: <i>Afio mai lau afioga</i> ‘Welcome, your Honour’	17
3.5 Conversation: <i>’O le tama a ai?</i> ‘Whose child?’	17
3.6 Exercises	18
LESSON 4	21
4.1 Past, present and future – tense particles	21
4.2 The particles <i>sā</i> and <i>na</i>	21
4.3 The particle <i>e</i>	21
4.4 The particle <i>’ua</i>	22

4.5	The particle 'o lo 'o and its short form 'o	23
4.6	The particle 'o le 'ā and its short form 'ā	23
4.7	'Good' and 'bad'	23
4.8	A rhyme: 'Oka'oka se tāgamea 'Oh, what a big washing!'	24
4.9	Exercises	25
LESSON 5		28
5.1	The specific and non-specific, singular and plural articles	28
5.2	Isi 'someone, other'	29
5.3	Singular and plural of nouns and verbs	30
5.4	'Front, back, top, inside, outside' – local nouns	32
5.5	'I am not a fool' – negation	33
5.6	Useful phrases: <i>Fai le kuka</i> 'Do the cooking'	33
5.7	Conversation: <i>Isa'ako, sau e 'ai!</i> 'Isaac, come and eat!'	34
5.8	Exercises	35
LESSON 6		39
6.1	'I and you' – independent pronouns	39
6.2	The preposition <i>i</i> with proper names and pronouns	40
6.3	The names of days of the week and months	40
6.4	'The boy loves the girl' – verbs expressing emotions	41
6.5	'For Mary' – the prepositions <i>ma</i> and <i>mo</i> 'for'	42
6.6	The directional particles <i>mai</i> and <i>atu</i>	43
6.7	The preposition <i>mai</i> 'from'	44
6.8	Conversation: 'O fea le lo'omatua? 'Where is the old woman?'	45
6.9	Exercises	45
LESSON 7		49
7.1	'I went to Apia' – preverbal pronouns	49
7.2	'Sina and I' – coordination of pronouns and nouns	50
7.3	Two ways of expressing 'want'	51
7.4	Emphasis of noun phrases	51
7.5	'Where and when?', 'Who and what?'	52
7.6	'Not' – negations	53
7.7	Conversation: 'O fea 'e te sau ai? 'Where do you come from?'	54
7.8	Conversation: <i>Tafaoga i le Tusitala</i> 'Going out to the Tusitala'	55
7.9	Conversation: 'E te valea? 'Are you stupid?'	55
7.10	A rhyme: <i>Māsina, māsina e</i> 'Moon, moon'	56
7.11	Exercises	56



LESSON 8	61
8.1 'My car' – singular possessive pronouns	61
8.2 Conversation: 'O ā mai 'oe? 'How are you?'	63
8.3 Conversation: 'Aumai so'u 'ofu! 'Fetch me a dress!'	63
8.4 Conversation: 'O le fale fai pa'u 'At the garage'	64
8.5 A rhyme: <i>Piki, piki, piki</i> 'Piggy, piggy, piggy'	64
8.6 Useful phrases: <i>Fafano ou lima!</i> 'Wash your hands!'	64
8.7 Exercises	65
LESSON 9	69
9.1 'Our car' – dual possessive pronouns	69
9.2 'Our car' – plural possessive pronouns	71
9.3 Two more verbal particles: 'ia and se'i	72
9.4 Useful phrases: 'Ia manuia – wishes and blessings	73
9.5 Conversation: <i>Nifo tīgā</i> 'Toothache'	73
9.6 Exercises	74
LESSON 10	78
10.1 'One, two, three' – cardinal numerals	78
10.2 'One, two, three each'	80
10.3 Useful phrases: <i>E fia ou tausaga?</i> 'How old are you?'	80
10.4 A children's rhyme with motions: <i>Tasi, tasi, tasi</i> 'One, one, one'	81
10.5 Conversation: <i>E to'afia lau fānau?</i> 'How many children do you have?'	82
10.6 Conversation: <i>Fa'atauga</i> 'Shopping'	82
10.7 Conversation: 'O le fale 'ie 'The drapery shop'	83
10.8 Exercises	83
LESSON 11	87
11.1 'Three onions' – more about counting	87
11.2 'This and that' – demonstratives	87
11.3 'Here and there' – locatives	89
11.4 Useful phrases: giving directions to the driver	89
11.5 'The day before yesterday' – talking about time	89
11.6 Telling the time of day in hours and minutes	90
11.7 Conversation: 'O le fono 'The meeting'	91
11.8 Conversation: 'O le malaga i Niu Sila 'Travelling to New Zealand'	91
11.9 Conversation: 'O le tāfaoga 'A trip'	92
11.10 Conversation: <i>Talanoaga i le telefoni</i> 'Conversation at the telephone'	92
11.11 Exercises	93

LESSON 12	96
12.1 <i>E sā ona ulaula</i> ‘Smoking is forbidden’ – verbs with <i>ona</i> clauses	96
12.2 ‘The dancing of the girl’ – nominalisations	97
12.3 ‘First, second, third’ – ordinal numerals	99
12.4 <i>Talu</i> ‘since’	99
12.5 Useful phrases: <i>Mālō!</i> ‘Well done!’ – compliments	99
12.6 Useful phrases: <i>Fa’atālofa fa’aaloalo</i> ‘Respectful greeting’	100
12.7 Conversation: <i>Malaga i le tama’i ta’avale</i> ‘Travelling by taxi’	101
12.8 Conversation: <i>Mānaia le aso!</i> ‘What a lovely day!’	102
12.9 Exercises	102
LESSON 13	106
13.1 ‘My father killed the pig’ – transitive verbs	106
13.2 <i>Faatauga</i> ‘Shopping’ – verbal nouns	107
13.3 ‘The whole day has gone’ – more phrases about time	108
13.4 Conversation: <i>Misi le pasi</i> ‘Missing the bus’	109
13.5 Conversation: <i>’Ole falemeli</i> ‘The post office’	109
13.6 Exercises	110
LESSON 14	113
14.1 <i>Lelei</i> and <i>fa’alelei</i> – the prefix <i>fa’a-</i>	113
14.2 <i>Alofa</i> and <i>alofagia</i> – the transitive ending	114
14.3 <i>Fa’alua</i> ‘twice’, <i>fa’atolu</i> ‘three times’	115
14.4 <i>Fai</i> and <i>faia</i> – the short and long forms of transitive verbs	115
14.5 ‘Don’t do it!’ – negative commands	116
14.6 Conversation: <i>Fa’aaogā le telefoni</i> ‘Use the telephone’	117
14.7 Conversation: <i>Pamu penisini</i> ‘Petrol station’	117
14.8 Exercises	118
LESSON 15	122
15.1 Several expressions for ‘Why?’ – ‘Because...’	122
15.2 ‘If you go to New Zealand...’ – conditional clauses	123
15.3 ‘This should not happen’ – the particle <i>ne’i</i>	124
15.4 <i>’Ina</i> clauses – conjunctions	124
15.5 ‘After, before, until’ – more time expressions	125
15.6 Useful phrases: <i>Fa’amolemole...</i> ‘Please...’	127
15.7 Conversation: <i>’Ua pisi tele le ’auala</i> ‘The road is too busy’	128
15.8 Exercises	129

LESSON 16: TEXTS	132
16.1 <i>'O le tatalo a le ali'i</i> 'The Lord's Prayer'	132
16.2    An advertisement for family planning	132
16.3    An advertisement for hardware	133
16.4 <i>'O le tusi 'aisi</i> 'A letter asking for help'	134
16.5 <i>'O le tusi fa'afetai</i> 'A thank you letter'	134
16.6 <i>'O Sina ma lana tuna</i> 'Sina and her eel'	135
 KEY TO THE EXERCISES	 136
SAMOAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	147
ENGLISH-SAMOAN VOCABULARY	166
BIBLIOGRAPHY	188

## PREFACE

This book evolved over several years while we were teaching the Samoan language at the Australian Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade in Canberra. We wish to thank all our enthusiastic and patient students, in particular David Hardy, David and Sue Hegarty, Adam Lees and Kylie Oakes, who encouraged us to start this book and contributed with their numerous questions and comments. Our thanks also go to Moina Simcock and David Butler from the New Zealand High Commission in Apia, Western Samoa, who tested an earlier version for its suitability for self-instruction. They uncovered many inconsistencies and also made us change our linguistic jargon into what we hope is a more readable language. Thanks are also due to the two anonymous reviewers who helped to improve this book with their professional advice, and to Tatjana Thiele and Ursula Gehrmann from the Linguistic Department of the University of Kiel, who thoroughly checked and typed the vocabularies. Finally, we would like to thank the staff of *Pacific Linguistics*, in particular Becky Quick, Jeanette Coombes and Pam Rosser, for their painstaking efforts in preparing this book for publication – *Fa'amālō fa'afetai*.

Work on this book was supported by three grants from the Australian Research Council which enabled La'i to travel to Western Samoa in 1990, 1992 and 1993 and do fieldwork on Samoan phraseology for a total of 13 weeks.

*La'i Ulrike Mosel and Ainslie So'o*  
Kiel and Canberra, February 1996

LESSON 16: TEXTS	132
16.1 <i>'O le tatalo a le ali'i</i> 'The Lord's Prayer'	132
16.2    An advertisement for family planning	132
16.3    An advertisement for hardware	133
16.4 <i>'O le tusi 'aisi</i> 'A letter asking for help'	134
16.5 <i>'O le tusi fa'afetai</i> 'A thank you letter'	134
16.6 <i>'O Sina ma lana tuna</i> 'Sina and her eel'	135
 KEY TO THE EXERCISES	 136
SAMOAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	147
ENGLISH-SAMOAN VOCABULARY	166
BIBLIOGRAPHY	188

## PREFACE

This book evolved over several years while we were teaching the Samoan language at the Australian Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade in Canberra. We wish to thank all our enthusiastic and patient students, in particular David Hardy, David and Sue Hegarty, Adam Lees and Kylie Oakes, who encouraged us to start this book and contributed with their numerous questions and comments. Our thanks also go to Moina Simcock and David Butler from the New Zealand High Commission in Apia, Western Samoa, who tested an earlier version for its suitability for self-instruction. They uncovered many inconsistencies and also made us change our linguistic jargon into what we hope is a more readable language. Thanks are also due to the two anonymous reviewers who helped to improve this book with their professional advice, and to Tatjana Thiele and Ursula Gehrmann from the Linguistic Department of the University of Kiel, who thoroughly checked and typed the vocabularies. Finally, we would like to thank the staff of *Pacific Linguistics*, in particular Becky Quick, Jeanette Coombes and Pam Rosser, for their painstaking efforts in preparing this book for publication – *Fa'amālō fa'afetai*.

Work on this book was supported by three grants from the Australian Research Council which enabled La'i to travel to Western Samoa in 1990, 1992 and 1993 and do fieldwork on Samoan phraseology for a total of 13 weeks.

*La'i Ulrike Mosel and Ainslie So'o*  
Kiel and Canberra, February 1996

## ABBREVIATIONS

adj.	adjective	nom.	nominal
adv.	adverb	num.	number
anaph.	anaphoric pronoun	o.s.	oneself
cf.	compare	part.	particle
conj.	conjunction	pl.	plural
dem.	demonstrative pronoun	poss.pron.	possessive pronoun
det.	determinative	pref.	prefix
dir.	directional particle	prep.	preposition
du.	dual	pron.	pronoun
em.	emotional	quant.	quantifier
exc.	exclusive	s.o.	someone
h.ch.	word used when talking to or about a high chief	s.th.	something
inc.	inclusive	sg.	singular
indef.	indefinite	t.ch.	word used when talking to or about a talking chief
interj.	interjection	t.n.	temporal noun
interr.	interrogative pronoun	TAM	tense-aspect or mood particle
lit.	literally	u.f.	<i>'upu fa'aaloalo</i> , a word of the respectful language
l.n.	local noun	v.	verb
mod.	modal verb	v.i.	intransitive verb
n.	noun	v.t.	transitive verb
neg.	negation		





## LESSON 1

### 1.1 THE PRONUNCIATION OF SAMOAN WORDS

The Samoan alphabet has five vowels and 13 consonants.

*a e i o u*  
*f g l m n p s t v*  
*h k r*  
' (glottal stop)

The vowels can be short or long. There are many words which are only distinguished by the length of one of their vowels. Long vowels can be marked by a macron (a dash above the vowel): *ā ē ī ō ū*

*a* [a] is similar to the vowel in Standard English *but*

*ā* [a:] is similar to *a* in Standard English *father*

*e* [e] is similar to *e* in Standard English *bet, wet*

*ē* [e:] is similar to *é* in French *l'été*

*i* [i] is similar to *e* in Standard English *enough*

*ī* [i:] is similar to *ee* in Standard English *peel*

*o* [o] is similar to *o* in Standard English *hot, pot*

*ō* [o:] is similar to *eau* in French *l'eau*

*u* [u] is similar to *oo* in Standard English *foot*

*ū* [u:] is similar to *oo* in Standard English *pool*

<i>fulu</i>	wash, clean	<i>fulū</i>	influenza, cold
<i>tama</i>	child, boy	<i>tamā</i>	father
<i>tala</i>	story	<i>tālā</i>	dollar

If the last syllable is short, the stress falls on the second last syllable. If it is long, the last syllable carries the stress: *fúlu, fulú, Tāvīta* 'David'.

Except for *g*, the consonants are more or less pronounced like their English counterparts. The pronunciation of *g* is similar to that of *ng* in words like *song*. Note that it can also occur at the beginning of the word:

<i>gata</i>	snake
<i>gutu</i>	mouth

The consonants *h*, *k*, *r* are practically only found in loanwords:

<i>Haikomisi</i>	High Commission
<i>Haikomesina</i>	High Commissioner
<i>Kirisimasi, Kilisimasi</i>	Christmas
<i>sikareti, sikaleti</i>	cigarettes

Since these consonants did not originally belong to the Samoan language, many people do not pronounce *h*, and *r* is often replaced by *l*.

The last consonant is the so-called glottal stop. This consonant is not found in Standard English. You pronounce it by interrupting the airstream coming out of your lungs. Try to pronounce it this way: say *hhhhh* and then cough a bit: *hhh 'hhh 'hhh*. The sound you make when coughing is the glottal stop. Now say *aaaa* and again interrupt yourself by little coughs: *aaa'aaa'aaa*.<sup>1</sup> Many Samoan words differ only in the presence or absence of the glottal stop:

<i>pau</i>	(be) all
<i>pa'u</i>	tyre
<i>pāū</i>	(be) eerie
<i>pa'ū</i>	fall

All syllables consist either of a vowel, or a consonant and a vowel. All words end in a vowel. Therefore, Samoans often add vowels in borrowed words.

<i>Iōsef-a</i>	Joseph
<i>K-i-ris-i-mas-i</i>	Christmas

Vowels and consonants which do not exist in Samoan (e.g. *b*, *d*, *g*) are replaced by their nearest counterpart (e.g. *p*, *t*, *k*).

<i>Tāvita</i>	David
<i>kōvana</i>	governor
<i>Makerita</i>	Margaret
<i>Lafumeni</i>	Rothmans

A word can contain sequences of two or more vowels:

<i>taeao</i>	morning, tomorrow
<i>aoauli</i>	midday, noon
<i>sāuā</i>	cruel
<i>uati</i>	watch, clock

<sup>1</sup> It is used, however, in colloquial English in such expressions as *O'o*, *here he comes*, or *a'a* 'No'.

Make sure that you hear and pronounce the difference between *au* and *ao*, and *ai* and *ae*.

<i>vai</i>	water
<i>vae</i>	leg, foot
<i>'au</i>	team
<i>ao</i>	day, daylight, cloud

The Samoan spelling is not as strictly standardised as the English spelling. There is a great deal of variation in what is written as one or more than one words, and vowel length and glottal stops are only sporadically indicated in Samoan books and newspapers.

## 1.2 THE 'GOOD' AND THE 'BAD' LANGUAGE

There are two varieties of the Samoan language: '*o le tautala lelei*' 'the good language' and '*o le tautala leaga*' 'the bad language'. The alphabet and sound system given above in §1.1. is that of the *tautala lelei*. The *tautala leaga* differs from the *tautala lelei* in that all *t*'s are replaced by *k*, and all *n*'s are replaced by *g* pronounced like *ng* in *song*. No *r*'s are found in the *tautala leaga*. Thus these two varieties sound very different.

T → K

<i>tala</i>	<i>kala</i>	story
<i>tālā</i>	<i>kālā</i>	dollar
<i>tupe</i>	<i>kupe</i>	money

N → G

<i>mānaia</i>	<i>māgaia</i>	good, nice
<i>nofo</i>	<i>gofo</i>	stay, sit
<i>naifi</i>	<i>gaifi</i>	knife

T, N, and R/L

K, G, and L

<i>Kirisimasi</i>	<i>Kilisimasi</i>	Christmas
<i>sikareti</i>	<i>sikaleti</i>	cigarette
<i>reitiō</i>	<i>leitiō</i>	radio
<i>nūmera</i>	<i>nūmela</i>	number

The *tautalalelei* and the *tautala leaga*, also called the T-language and the K-language, are used in different social contexts.

*tautala lelei* /T-language

Church, prayers  
school  
radio broadcasts

*tautala leaga* /K-language

everyday conversations among Samoans  
in the family  
speeches in the village council

all written language  
songs, poetry  
speeches in the parliament

Most Samoans speak the T-language to foreigners and expect foreigners, if they know Samoan, to speak the T-language.

### 1.3 GREETINGS, FAREWELLS AND OTHER IMPORTANT, EVERYDAY PHRASES

*Fa'amolemole.* Please.  
*Fa'afetai.* Thank you.

Note that the Samoan people do not say 'thank you' as often as English speaking people. This is not because they are impolite (Samoans are very polite people), but because they have different conventions.

<i>Tālofa.</i>	Hello.
<i>Tālofa lava.</i>	Hello (reply to <i>tālofa</i> ).
<i>Mālō.</i>	Hi.
<i>Soifua.</i>	Good health.
<i>'O ā mai 'oe?</i> what you	How are you?
<i>Manuia fa'afetai.</i> fine thanks	Fine, thank you.
<i>Po 'o fa'apēfea mai 'oe?</i> how you	How are you?
<i>'O lo'o manuia lava fa'afetai.</i> well very thanks	Doing very well, thank you.
<i>'Ae ā 'oe?</i> but what you	And you?
<i>Fa'apēnā fo'i.</i> like that too	Fine too.

Instead of these greetings people also ask questions like the following when they meet:

<i>'O fea 'e te alu i ai?</i> where you go to	Where are you going?
--	----------------------

<sup>2</sup> At this stage an explanation of all grammatical constructions would be unnecessarily confusing for the language learner. Therefore, we give you a word by word translation. Note that at the end of questions the voice is lowered.

'Ou te alu i le gālua. I am going to work.  
I go to the work

'Ua 'e mānava? Have you finished work?  
you finished.work

'Ioe. Yes.  
yes

When someone is ill or has a difficult time, you can express your sympathy by *Tālofa e* 'I feel very sorry for you.'

'Ete ma'i? Are you sick?

'I. Yes. (common short form of 'ioe)

Tālofae. Poor (thing).

Surprise is expressed by 'oka or 'oka'oka, which is always, even in the T-language, pronounced with a k.

'Oka! Gosh!

'Oka 'oka! How extraordinary!

When you want to go past a person, lower your body and say

Tulou. Excuse me.

The most common farewell formula is:

Tōfā. Good bye.

Tōfā soifua. Good bye (the reply to tōfā).

Fā. Good bye (in short form).

Fā soifua. Good bye (reply to fā).

If you go for a longer trip, you might hear *Manuia le malaga!* 'Have a nice trip!' The answer to this farewell wish is *Manuia le fa'amuli!* which approximately means 'Have a nice staying back home'. You will also hear expressions which seem to be modelled after English ones as for instance:

Toe feiloa'i. See you again.  
again see.each.other

Manuia le pō. Good night.  
good the night

'Ia manuia le aso. Have a nice day.  
nice the day

## 1.4 EXERCISES

## EXERCISE 1: Read.

*E sesē le tali.*

is wrong the answer

The answer is wrong.

*Fōnō le tama.*

call the boy

Call the boy.

*Pau lea.*

all this

This is all.

*'Ua pā le pa'u o le pasi.*

has exploded the tyre of the bus

The bus has a flat tyre. (lit. The tyre of the bus has exploded.)

*Sau taeao. Sau i le aoauli.*

come tomorrow come at the noon.

Come tomorrow. Come at noon.

## EXERCISE 2

The Samoans like to adjust all foreign words and names to the sound system of their language. From which English names and other words are the following Samoan words derived?

- |                      |                    |                   |                    |                   |
|----------------------|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. <i>Niu Sila</i>   | <i>'Ausetālia</i>  | <i>Sini</i>       | <i>'Aukilani</i>   | <i>Saina</i>      |
| 2. <i>konetineta</i> | <i>Leipa Pati</i>  | <i>polokalame</i> | <i>iunivesitē</i>  | <i>kalapu</i>     |
| 3. <i>līpoti</i>     | <i>'aisakulimi</i> | <i>komipiuta</i>  | <i>Kuinisilani</i> | <i>'ovasiteia</i> |
| 4. <i>kāpoti</i>     | <i>louni</i>       | <i>tiliva</i>     | <i>sipuni</i>      | <i>naifi</i>      |

## EXERCISE 3

Try to Samoanise the following English words so that they only contain Samoan sounds (letters) and have a Samoan syllable structure:

- |              |           |        |           |
|--------------|-----------|--------|-----------|
| 1. radio     | rugby     | apply  | hamburger |
| 2. champion  | committee | office | style     |
| 3. company   | January   | March  | newspaper |
| 4. telephone | shift     | check  | science   |

EXERCISE 4: Change to *tautala leaga* (K-language).

- |                             |             |
|-----------------------------|-------------|
| 1. <i>'O a'u 'o Tāvita.</i> | I am David. |
| 2. <i>Tālofa Malia.</i>     | Hello Mary. |
| 3. <i>Fa'afetai.</i>        | Thank you.  |
| 4. <i>Tōfā soifua.</i>      | Good bye.   |
| 5. <i>Tulou!</i>            | Excuse me!  |

- |                                 |                  |
|---------------------------------|------------------|
| 6. <i>Tolu tālā.</i>            | Three dollars.   |
| 7. <i>Manuia le Kirisimasi.</i> | Merry Christmas. |
| 8. <i>Mānaia tele.</i>          | Very nice.       |

## LESSON 2

### 2.1 'DANCE!' – VERB PHRASES, NOUN PHRASES

<i>Siva!</i>	Dance!
<i>Sisiva!</i> <sup>1</sup>	Dance! (said to more than one person)
<i>Sā siva le teine.</i> <sup>2</sup>	The girl danced.
<i>Sā siva le tama.</i> <sup>3</sup>	The boy danced.
<i>Sā sisiva tama.</i>	The boys danced.
<i>Sā sisiva tamaiti.</i> <sup>4</sup>	The children danced.

#### (1) Verbs and verb phrases

In commands you use the bare verb, e.g. *Siva!* 'Dance!' In other sentences, when you talk about the past, the present or the future, the verb is combined with a little word which indicates the time, e.g. *sā* indicating the past. These words are called tense particles. The tense particle and the verb form the verb phrase, i.e. *sā siva* 'danced' is a verb phrase. Many verbs have a different form for the plural, e.g. *siva* (sg.), *sisiva* (pl.). In simple verbal sentences like the ones above, the verb phrase comes first.

#### (2) Nouns and noun phrases

In the singular the noun has the article *le*, in the plural the noun has no article, e.g. *le tama* 'the boy', *tama* 'the boys'. The noun and its article form a noun phrase, e.g. *le teine* 'the girl'. In the plural the noun phrase consists of the noun only, e.g. *teine* 'the girls'.

<i>Sā alu le teine.</i> <sup>5</sup>	The girl went.	<i>Sā ō teine.</i>	The girls went.
<i>Sā sau le teine.</i> <sup>6</sup>	The girl came.	<i>Sā ō mai teine.</i>	The girls came.
<i>Sā moe le pepe.</i> <sup>7</sup>	The baby slept.	<i>Sā momoe pepe.</i>	The babies slept.

<sup>1</sup> *siva* v.i. (pl. *sisiva*), dance

<sup>2</sup> *sā* expresses that something happened in the past; *le teine* 'the girl'

<sup>3</sup> *le tama* 'the boy'; *tama* 'the boys' (note that there is no *le*)

<sup>4</sup> *tamaiti* 'the children'

<sup>5</sup> *alu* v.i. (pl. *ō*), go

<sup>6</sup> *sau* v.i. (pl. *ō mai*), come; *mai* dir., here to the place where we are now

<sup>7</sup> *moe* v.i. (pl. *momoe*), sleep; *pepe* n., baby



*Sā savali le tama.*<sup>8</sup> The boy walked.

*Sā nofo le tama.*<sup>9</sup> The boy stayed.

*Sā sāvavali tama.* The boys walked.

*Sā nonofo tama.* The boys stayed.

## 2.2 'IN' AND 'TO' – PREPOSITIONS

*Sā alu le teine i Apia.*<sup>10</sup>

*Sā nofo le teine i le fale.*

*Sau i 'ī!*<sup>11</sup>

*Alu i fafo!*<sup>12</sup>

*Nofo i le fale!*

*Nofo i lalo!*<sup>13</sup>

The girl went to Apia.

The girl stayed in the house.

Come here!

Go outside!

Stay in the house! Stay home!

Sit down!

Noun phrases can be preceded by a preposition. One of the most important prepositions is the locative preposition *i*, 'in, at, on, to'. At the beginning of a sentence and in slow speech, *i* is often preceded by a glottal stop.

## 2.3 'WHAT'S YOUR NAME?'

'O le ā?

'O ai?

'O le teine.

'O Pita.

'O a'u.

'O 'oe.

What?

Who?

The girl.

Peter.

I.

You (sg.).

If a sentence is formed only by one noun phrase, this noun phrase is introduced by 'o, e.g. 'O a'u. 'It's I'. This little word 'o has no equivalent in English. The glottal stop is often dropped when 'o occurs within the sentence. We will consistently write the glottal stop in order to distinguish 'o from the preposition o 'of' (cf. §2.5.), although both often sound the same and Samoans do not distinguish them in their writings. The question word (interrogative pronoun) ā 'what' takes the article *le*, but *ai* 'who' does not. *Ai* 'who' behaves like a proper name of persons:

'O ai lou igoa?  
who your name

What's your name?

<sup>8</sup> *savali* v.i. (pl. *sāvavali*), walk

<sup>9</sup> *nofo* v.i. (pl. *nonofo*), stay, sit, sit down

<sup>10</sup> *i* prep., to, into, in, at

<sup>11</sup> 'ī l.n., here

<sup>12</sup> *fafo* l.n., outside

<sup>13</sup> *lalo* l.n., down

'O lo'u igoa 'o Tiva. my name Tiva	My name is Tiva.
'O ai le tagata lea? who the person this	Who is this person?
'O lo'u tinā lea. my mother this	This is my mother.
'O le ā le mea lea? the what the thing this	What is this?
'O fea le falemeli? <sup>14</sup> where the post.office	Where is the post office?

Samoan does not have a word for 'to be'. A sentence can consist of two noun phrases; one functioning as the subject (what you talk about) and the other one functioning as its predicate (the new information you give about the subject).

SUBJECT	PREDICATE	
'O lo'u igoa	'o Simi.	My name is Jimmy.
'O lo'u tinā	'o Sina. <sup>15</sup>	My mother is Sina.
'O lo'u tamā	'o Seu. <sup>16</sup>	My father is Seu.

If the subject comes first, both the subject and the predicate are marked by 'o. If the predicate comes first only the predicate takes 'o, but not the subject.

PREDICATE	SUBJECT	
'O ai	le tagata lea?	Who is this person?
'O lo'u tinā	lea.	This is my mother.

## 2.4 USEFUL PHRASES: *Tapena le fale!* 'Tidy up the house!'

<i>tapuni le faitoto'a</i>	shut the door
<i>tatala le fa'amalama</i>	open the window
<i>tapena le fale</i>	tidy up the house
<i>tapena le potu</i>	tidy up the room
<i>tapena le potu mālōlō</i> <sup>17</sup>	tidy up the sitting room
<i>fufulu ipu</i>	wash the dishes
<i>solo ipu</i>	dry the dishes
<i>fai le tāgamea</i>	do the laundry
<i>tautau le tāgamea</i>	hang the laundry

<sup>14</sup> *falemeli* n., post office (< *fale* house, *meli* < English *mail*)

<sup>15</sup> *tinā* n., mother

<sup>16</sup> *tamā* n., father

<sup>17</sup> *potu mālōlō* n., sitting room; *mālōlō* v.i., have a rest

<i>salu le fola</i>	sweep the floor
<i>olo le puipui</i>	scrub the wall
<i>fufulu le kāpeta</i>	wash the linoleum
<i>fufulu le faleuila</i>	wash the toilet
<i>fufulu le potu tā'ele</i>	wash the bathroom

## 2.5 CONVERSATION: *Tālofa tama'ita'i* 'Greetings, Madam'

In this conversation we introduce the preposition *o* 'of' which does not have a glottal stop and must be distinguished from the untranslatable *'o*. More about *o* 'of' in §3.1. Some nouns may be used as forms of address without an article, e.g. *Ali'i!* 'Sir!'.

<i>Tālofa tama'ita'i</i> . <sup>18</sup>	Greetings, Madam.
<i>Tālofa ali'i</i> . <sup>19</sup>	Greetings, Sir.
<i>'O ai lou igoa?</i>	What is your name? (lit. Who is your name?)
<i>'O lo'u igoa 'o Telesia.</i>	My name is Theresa.
<i>'O ai 'oe?</i>	Who are you?
<i>'O a'u 'o Mika.</i>	I am Mike.
<i>'O ai lou tamā?</i>	Who is your father?
<i>'O lo'u tamā 'o Iōane.</i>	My father is John.
<i>'O fea lou nu'u?</i> <sup>20</sup>	Where is your village?
<i>'O lo'u nu'u 'o Malie.</i>	My village is Malie.
<i>'O ai le igoa o le tamā o lou tamā?</i>	What is your grandfather's name? (lit. the name of the father of your father)
<i>'O le tamā o lo'u tamā 'o Le'apai.</i>	My grandfather is Le'apai.
<i>'O le matai tāua o le nu'u.</i> <sup>21</sup>	He is an important chief of the village.

## 2.6 EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Translate and change into the plural.

1. *Sā siva le teine i le fale.*
2. *Sā moe le tama i le potu mālōlō.*
3. *Sā alu le teine i le falemeli.*
4. *Sā savali le tama i le lotu.*<sup>22</sup>
5. *Sā nofo le matai i le fale.*

<sup>18</sup> *tama'ita'i* n., lady, polite word for 'woman'

<sup>19</sup> *ali'i* n., 1. high chief, 2. Sir, but often used as general form of address, some people also say *ali'i* to little children and women

<sup>20</sup> *nu'u* n., village

<sup>21</sup> *matai* n., chief; *tāua* v.i., (be) important

<sup>22</sup> *lotu* n., church (service)

EXERCISE 2: Substitute.

*Sā alu le fafine i Apia.*

1. *i le falemeli*
2. *i le faletupe*
3. *i le falema'i*
4. *i le māketi*
5. *i le faleā'oga*
6. *i le falesā*
7. *i le falekomiti*
8. *i le lotu*
9. *i le tīfaga*
10. *i le galuega*

The woman went to Apia.

- to the post office
- to the bank
- to the hospital
- to the market
- to the school building
- to the church
- to the committee house
- to church
- to the pictures
- to work

EXERCISE 3: Substitute.

*'O lo'u tamā 'o le pulenu'u.*

1. *'o le ali'i*
2. *'o le tūlāfale*
3. *'o le faife'au*
4. *'o le faia'oga*
5. *'o le faifaiva*
6. *'o le kāmuta*
7. *'o le faipaipa*
8. *'o le faifa'ato'aga*
9. *'o le lōia*
10. *'o le puleā'oga*

My father is a village mayor.

- high chief
- orator
- pastor
- teacher
- fisherman
- carpenter
- plumber
- farmer
- lawyer
- school principal

EXERCISE 4: Substitute.

*'O fea le falemeli?*

1. *le faletupe*
2. *le falema'i*
3. *le fale'oloa*
4. *le fale'ese*
5. *le falepuipui*
6. *le faleā'oga*
7. *le fale o le faife'au*
8. *le fale o le 'inisia*
9. *le fale o le fōma'i*
10. *le fale'aiga*

Where is the post office?

- the bank
- the hospital
- the shop
- the toilet
- the jail
- the school
- the pastor's house
- the house of the engineer
- the house of the doctor
- the restaurant

## EXERCISE 5: Translate.

1. What is your name? My name is David.
2. Who is your mother?
3. My mother is Sina.
4. Who is your father?
5. My father is Jimmy.
6. My father is an important chief.
7. Where is the village of your mother?
8. What is your (maternal) grandmother's name?
9. My grandmother's name is Margaret.
10. Where is your mother?

## LESSON 3

### 3.1 'JIMMY'S CAR' – POSSESSIVE PREPOSITIONS

*'o le ta'avale a Simi*

Jimmy's car

*'o le fale o Simi*

Jimmy's house

There are two prepositions, *a* and *o*, which express that something belongs to someone.<sup>1</sup> We call them possessive prepositions. In general, the preposition *a* is used for things the owner can easily acquire and abandon again.

*'o le naifi a le fafine*

the woman's knife

*'o le lēitiō a le ali'i*

the chief's radio

*'o le tusi a le teine*

the girl's book

The preposition *o* is used for kin relationships, body parts, clothes, houses, emotions and feelings. On the whole, *o* expresses more permanent and close relationships, often relationships one cannot control.

*'o le tinā o le teine*

the girl's mother

*'o le lima o le tama*

the boy's hand

*'o le 'ofu o le fafine*

the woman's dress

*'o le 'ofisa o le failautusi*

the secretary's office

*'o le fefe o le teine*

the girl's fear

*'o le alofa o le Atua*

God's love

In the following examples the *o* expresses that something is a part of an object:

*'o le pa'u o le pasi*

the tyre of the bus

*'o le faitoto'a o le fale*

the door of the house

*'o le fa'amalama o le fale*

the window of the house

The distinction between *a* and *o* is most obvious when one and the same noun is combined with *a* and *o*. Compare:

*'o le 'upu a le ali'i*

the word of the chief

*'o le 'upu o le pese*

the word of the song

<sup>1</sup> After a pause or in slow speech *a* and *o* can be pronounced with a glottal stop ('a, 'o), but we consistently write them without the glottal stop (cf. §2.2. and §2.3. for similar conventions).

'o le fale o Seu

Seu's house (where he lives)

'o le fale a Seu

Seu's house (the house Seu has built)

The choice of *a* and *o* is not always predictable. Some words for kin relationships take *a* where one would expect *o*, and other words take *o* although they seem similar to words taking *a*. (No language is as regular as the language learner would like it to be.)

'o le fānau a Makerita

Margaret's children (lit. the offspring of Margaret)

'o le solosolo o le teine

the handkerchief of the girl

'o le fa'amalu o le fafine

the umbrella of the woman

Kinship terms taking *o*:

'o le afafine o le tamāloa

the man's daughter

'o le atali'i o le tamāloa

the man's son

'o le uso o le tamāloa

the man's brother

'o le uso o le fafine

the woman's sister

'o le tuafafine o le tamāloa

the man's sister

'o le tuagane o le fafine

the woman's brother

'o le faletua o le faife'au<sup>2</sup>

the pastor's wife

'o le tausī o le tūlāfale<sup>3</sup>

the wife of the talking chief

'o le to'alua o le tamāloa

the man's wife

'o le to'alua o le fafine

the woman's husband

'o le tamā o le teine

the girl's father

'o le tinā o le tama

the boy's mother

'o le tei o Simi

Jimmy's younger brother or sister

Kinship terms taking *a*:

'o le fānau a Simi

Jimmy's children

'o le tama a Makerita

Margaret's child, Margaret's son

'o le teine a Makerita

Margaret's daughter

'o le pepe a Makerita

Margaret's baby

'o le āvā a Simi

Jimmy's wife

'o le tāne a Makerita

Margaret's husband

'o le tama a ai?

whose child? (lit. the child of whom?)

Note that the Samoan kinship system differs from the English one in several respects:

<sup>2</sup> faletua n., wife (of a pastor or of a high chief)

<sup>3</sup> tausī n., wife (of an orator, talking chief)

1. There is no term for 'grandmother' and 'grandfather'. You just say 'o le tamā o lo'u tamā 'father of my father', 'o le tinā o lo'u tamā 'the mother of my father', and so on.
2. The word *uso* means 'sibling of the same sex', this means 'brother' when it is the *uso* of a man, and 'sister' when it is the *uso* of a woman. *Uso* is also used for cousins of the same sex.
3. There are different terms for 'son' and 'daughter'. When you speak of the son and the daughter of a man you say 'o le atali'i and 'o le afafine respectively, whereas a woman's son and daughter are called *tama tama* and *tama teine* or just simply *tama* and *teine*.

### 3.2 'Upu fa'aaloalo 'Respectful words'

When Samoan people speak to or about God, their chiefs, pastors and other honourable people, they often use so-called 'upu fa'aaloalo 'respectful words' (henceforth abbreviated u.f.) in order to express their respect. These words replace the words of the ordinary language. In some cases different words are used when speaking to a high chief (h.ch.) or a talking chief (t.ch.). Most of these words refer to things, actions, or events which are very personal.

Ordinary language	Respectful language	Gloss
'ai	tausami (h.ch.), taumafa (t.ch.)	eat
fale	maota (h.ch.) laoa (t.ch.)	house
faife'au	fa'afeagaiga	pastor
igoa	suafa	name
oti	maliu	die
tā'ele	fa'amālū, 'au'au	bathe
tūlāfale	fetalaiga	talking chief

### 3.3 'THE HIGH CHIEF SEUPULE' – TITLES AND NAMES

When a noun is followed by a proper name, the proper name is marked by 'o, which is not to be confused with the possessive preposition o.

'o le fafine	'o Makerita	the woman Margaret
'o le faife'au	'o Ta'ape	the pastor Ta'ape
'o le ali'i	'o Seu	the high chief Seu
'o le matai	'o Tānoa	the chief Tanoa
'o le tūlāfale	'o Leota	the talking chief Leota



In respectful language you talk about honourable people as follows:

'o le afioga iā Seupule <sup>4</sup>	the honourable high chief Seupule
'o le tōfā iā Leota <sup>5</sup>	the honourable talking chief Leota
'o le susuga iā Ta'ape <sup>6</sup>	the honourable Ta'ape
'o le susuga i le failautusi o le kapeneta <sup>7</sup>	the honourable secretary of the cabinet
'o le susuga iā Malietoa	the honourable Malietoa
'o le susuga i le faiā'oga	the honourable teacher

When you talk directly to honourable people, you use these respectful titles with the possessive pronoun *lau* 'your'.

<i>Lau afioga Seupule</i>	Your honour Seupule
<i>Lau tōfā Leota</i>	Your honour Leota
<i>Lau susuga Ta'ape</i>	Your honour Ta'ape

### 3.4 USEFUL PHRASES: *Afio mai lau afioga* 'Welcome, your honour'

When a chief or pastor enters the house, you say:

<i>Afio mai lau afioga Seupule.</i>	Welcome, your honour Seupule.
<i>Maliu mai lau tōfā (le fetalaiga) Nu'u.</i>	Welcome, your honour (the talking chief) Nu'u.
<i>Susū mai lau susuga (le fa'afeagaiga) Ta'ape.</i>	Welcome, your honour (the pastor) Ta'ape.

When you are not sure how to greet a person, it is always appropriate to say:

<i>Susū mai lau susuga.</i>	Welcome, your honour.
<i>Tālofa lau susuga.</i>	How do you do, your honour?

### 3.5 CONVERSATION: 'O le tama a ai? 'Whose child?'

'Ei, 'o le tama lea a ai?	Hey, whose child is this?
'O le tama a Sieni.	It is Jane's child.
'O ai Sieni?	Who is Jane?
'O Sieni 'o le afafine o le faife'au.	Jane is the daughter of the pastor.
'O ai le igoa o le faife'au?	What is the pastor's name?

<sup>4</sup> *afioga* n., used for high chiefs and persons who deserve high respect as, for instance, the ministers of the government; *iā* a variant of the locative preposition (cf. §2.2.), used with proper names.

<sup>5</sup> *tōfā* n., only used for talking chiefs

<sup>6</sup> *susuga* n., used for Malietoa, the head of state, for pastors and other people such as school teachers who deserve respect because of their office or appointment; also used for some chiefs.

<sup>7</sup> *i* prep., (cf. §2.2); *failautusi* n., secretary

'O Setefano.

'O fea le nu'u o le faife'au?

Setefano.

Which village is the pastor from? (lit.  
Where is the village of the pastor?)

### 3.6 EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Substitute.

'O ai le tamā o Tāvita?

1. le tinā
2. le uso
3. le tuafafine
4. le atali'i
5. le afafine
6. 'O ai le tinā o Makerita
7. le tama a
8. le tama tama a
9. le tama teine a
10. le fānau a

Who is David's father?

mother  
brother  
sister  
son  
daughter

Who is Margaret's mother?

child  
son (boy)  
daughter (girl)  
children

EXERCISE 2: Substitute.

'O ai le igoa o le faletua o le faife'au?

1. o le to'alua o Makerita
2. o le tama a Makerita
3. o le uso o Makerita
4. o le tuagane o Makerita
5. o le to'alua o Simi
6. o le uso o Simi
7. o le tuafafine o Simi
8. o le atali'i o Simi
9. o le tamā o le tamā o Simi
10. o le tinā o le tamā o Simi

What's the name of the pastor's wife?

of Margaret's husband  
of Margaret's child  
of Margaret's sister  
of Margaret's brother  
of Jimmy's wife  
of Jimmy's brother  
of Jimmy's sister  
of Jimmy's son  
of Jimmy's grandfather  
of Jimmy's grandmother

EXERCISE 3: Answer the following questions by using the words in brackets. Translate the answers.

'O le ta'avale a ai? (le faife'au)

→ 'O le ta'avale a le faife'au.

1. 'O le fale o ai? (le ali'i)
2. 'O le to'alua o ai? (Simi)

3. 'O le tinā o ai? (le faletua o le faife'au)
4. 'O le fānau a ai? (Makerita)
5. 'O le pepe a ai? (le teine)
6. 'O le tama a ai? (Sina)
7. 'O le tusi a ai? (Seu)
8. 'O le 'ōfisa o ai? (Tāvita)
9. 'O le tamā o ai? (le fafine)
10. 'O le tuagane o ai? (Sieni)

EXERCISE 4: Fill the singular or plural verb form into the blank space and translate.

1. Sā\_\_\_\_\_ Tāvita. (sau)
2. Sā\_\_\_\_\_ tamaiti. (moe)
3. Sā\_\_\_\_\_ teine i le 'auala. (savali)
4. Sā\_\_\_\_\_ le tama i le fale. (nofo)
5. Sā\_\_\_\_\_ fafine i le māketi. (alu)
6. Sā\_\_\_\_\_ tama i le falema'i. (sau)
7. Sā\_\_\_\_\_ le tinā i le faletifaga. (savali)
8. Sā\_\_\_\_\_ Simi i le faletupe. (alu)
9. Sā\_\_\_\_\_ tamaiti i le ā'oga. (nofo)
10. Sā\_\_\_\_\_ le tama i Apia. (siva)

EXERCISE 5: Translate.

1. Fred is Margaret's husband.
2. Joseph is Margaret's son.
3. Joseph is Fred's son.
4. Elisabeth is Margaret's daughter.
5. Elisabeth is Fred's daughter.
6. Elisabeth is Joseph's sister.
7. Joseph is Elisabeth's brother.
8. Fefiloi is Elisabeth's sister.
9. Fa'a'uma is Joseph's brother.
10. Peter (Petelo) is Margaret's father.

EXERCISE 6: Translate.

1. Where is Seu's knife?
2. Where is Peter's umbrella?
3. Where is Sina's dress?
4. Where is Sina's radio?
5. Where is Fred's car?
6. Where is Margaret's shop?
7. Where is the village school?
8. Where is the doctor's house?

## LESSON 4

### 4.1 PAST, PRESENT AND FUTURE – TENSE PARTICLES

Sā siva le teine.

The girl danced.

'Ole'ā siva le teine.

The girl is going to dance.

'Olo'o siva le teine.

The girl is dancing.

'Ua alu le teine.

The girl has gone.

Samoan verbs do not inflect for tense like English verbs ('I'll go, I went, I am going, I have gone', etc.), but are combined with tense particles (cf. §2.1). There are 11 particles of this kind in Samoan.

### 4.2 THE PARTICLES *sā* AND *na*

Sā nofo le fafine i Apia.

The woman stayed in Apia.

Na pā le pa'u.<sup>1</sup>

The tyre exploded.

Na pa'ū le tamaitiiti.<sup>2</sup>

The child fell down.

There are two particles for the past, *sā* and *na*, which are more or less interchangeable, but *na* is preferred for events that happened unexpectedly and had a short duration.

### 4.3 THE PARTICLE *e*

The tense particle *e* indicates that something usually or always happens or that something will happen in the future. In the beginning of a sentence or after a pause *e* is often pronounced as 'e, but we consistently write *e*.

*E* alu le pasi i Apia.

The bus goes to Apia.

*E ā'oga* le teine i Apia.<sup>3</sup>

The girl goes to school in Apia.

---

<sup>1</sup> *pā* v.i., (pl. *pāpā*) explode; *pa'u* n., skin, tyre

<sup>2</sup> *pa'ū* v.i., (pl. *pa'u'ū*) fall

<sup>3</sup> *ā'oga* 1. n., school, 2. v.i., go to school

*E sau āfea lou tamā?*<sup>4</sup>

When will your father come?

*E sau lo'u tamā i le vaiaso lea.*<sup>5</sup>

My father will come next week.

With words denoting qualities, properties or states of being *e* refers to the present. Thus *e lelei* means that something is good.

*E mānaia.*

It is nice.

*E lelei.*

It's alright.

*E leaga.*

It's bad.

*E mamao.*

It's far away.

*E pisi tele le fafine.*<sup>6</sup>

The woman is very busy.

*E sa'o 'oe.*<sup>7</sup>

You are right.

#### 4.4 THE PARTICLE 'ua

The particle *'ua* indicates that something has changed.

*'Ua lelei.*

It is good now (but was not good before).

*'Ua ma'i le fafine.*<sup>8</sup>

The woman has become ill.

*'Ua timu.*<sup>9</sup>

It is raining now (has started to rain).

*'Ua alu le pasi.*

The bus has gone.

*'Ua sau lo'u tinā.*

My mother has come.

*'Ua tumu le pasi.*<sup>10</sup>

The bus is full now.

*'Ua pā le pa'u.*

The tyre has burst (and is flat now).

*'Ua 'āmata le ā'oga.*<sup>11</sup>

The school has started.

*'Ua 'uma le lotu.*<sup>12</sup>

The service/prayer is finished.

*'Ua pō.*<sup>13</sup>

It's already night now. (Said to a child who wants to play outside.)

Note that in fast speech *'ua alu* 'has gone' is pronounced as [walu].

4 *āfea* interr., when (in the future)

5 *vaiaso* n., week; *lea* dem., this, next

6 *pisi* v.i., (be) busy; *tele* adv., very

7 *sa'o* v.i., (be) straight, right; *'oe* pron., you (sg.)

8 *ma'i* 1. v.i. (pl. *mama'i*), (be) ill, 2. n., illness; patient

9 *timu* v.i., rain, n., rain

10 *tumu* v.i., (be) full

11 *'āmata* v.i. & v.t., start, begin

12 *'uma* v.i., be finished, be over; *lotu* 1. n., worship, prayer, church, 2. v., worship

13 *pō* 1. n., night, darkness, 2. v., be night, dark

## 4.5 THE PARTICLE 'olo'o AND ITS SHORT FORM 'o

'O lo'o siva le teine.	The girl is dancing.
'O lo'o ma'i pea le fafine. <sup>14</sup>	The woman is still sick.

The particle 'olo'o (mostly written as two words 'o lo'o, o loo) indicates that an event or state of being is still going on, and thus is similar to the English progressive form. The short form 'o is used in questions.

'O ma'i ā lou tinā? <sup>15</sup>	Is your mother still sick?
Leai, 'ua manuia. <sup>16</sup>	No, she is well.

In spoken language one often hears 'o lā e or lā e instead of 'o lo'o.

'O moe ā lou tamā?	Is your father still sleeping?
'Ioe, 'o lā e moe ā.	Yes, he is still sleeping.
'O fea le teine?	Where is the girl?
Lā e moe.	She is sleeping.

## 4.6 THE PARTICLE 'o le 'ā AND ITS SHORT FORM 'ā

'O le 'ā malemo le tama!	The child is going to drown!
'O le 'ā malaga le teine i Savai'i.	The girl is going to travel to Savai'i.
'Ā sau le tama?	Is the boy in fact coming?

The particles 'ole'ā (mostly written 'o le 'a or o le a) and 'ā express that something will definitely happen in the future or is thought of as going to happen immediately. The short form is mainly used in questions.

## 4.7 'GOOD' AND 'BAD'

Words expressing properties and qualities such as *lelei* 'good' and *tumu* 'full' behave exactly like verbs in the following Samoan sentences, whereas the corresponding English adjectives must be combined with a form of 'to be'.

<u>E lelei</u> le mea'ai. <sup>17</sup>	The food <u>is good</u> .
<u>E leaga</u> le mea lea.	This (thing) <u>is bad</u> .
<u>E lanumoana</u> le pasi a Simi. <sup>18</sup>	Jimmy's bus <u>is blue</u> .
<u>E alu</u> le pasi i Apia.	The bus <u>goes</u> to Apia.

<sup>14</sup> *pea* adv., still

<sup>15</sup> *ā* this particle softens the questions and answers; here the speaker expresses that he or she does not expect the mother to be still sick

<sup>16</sup> *leai* interj., no

<sup>17</sup> *mea'ai* n., food (< *mea* n., thing)

<sup>18</sup> *lanumoana* v.i., (be) blue (< *lanu* n., colour + *moana* n., ocean)

When they modify a noun, they follow the noun.

'o le mea'ai lelei	the good food
'o le pasi lanumoana	the blue bus
'o le 'ofu pa'epa'e <sup>19</sup>	the white dress
'o le 'ofu fou <sup>20</sup>	the new dress
'o le 'ofu tuai <sup>21</sup>	the old dress
'o le fafine lāpo'a <sup>22</sup>	the big woman
'o le fafine pa'e'e <sup>23</sup>	the thin woman
'o le tama pu'upu'u <sup>24</sup>	the short boy
'o le tama 'umi <sup>25</sup>	the tall boy
'o le taimi pu'upu'u	the short time
'o le taimi 'umi	the long time

For emphasis you can add *lava* 'very'. Note that *'umi* becomes *'umī*.

E 'umī lava le 'auala. <sup>26</sup>	The road is very long.
'o le 'auala 'umī lava	a very long road

#### 4.8 A RHYME: 'Oka'oka se tāgamea! 'Oh, what a big washing!'

'Oka 'oka se tāgamea, <sup>27</sup>	Oh, (what) a big washing,
Lavalava 'uma 'ua 'ele'elea. <sup>28</sup>	All the clothes are dirty.
'Ofu piliti ma 'ofu felea <sup>29</sup>	Pleated dresses and flared dresses
'Ou te lē iloa pē 'aumai i fea <sup>30</sup>	I don't know where they're from.
Tālofa iā Tinā 'ua fai le masoā. <sup>31</sup>	Poor Mother has prepared the starch.

19 'ofu n., dress; pa'epa'e v.i., (be) white

20 fou v.i., (be) new

21 tuai v.i., (be) old

22 lāpo'a v.i., (be) big

23 pa'e'e v.i., (be) thin

24 pu'upu'u v.i., (be) short

25 'umi v.i., (be) long

26 'auala n., road

27 se art., a; tāgamea n., washing

28 lavalava n., clothes; 'uma v.i., (be) all; 'ele'elea v.i., (be) dirty (from earth, soil); 'ele'ele n., earth

29 piliti v.i., (be) pleated; felea v.i., (be) flared

30 'ou pron., I; te a variant of the tense particle e used when pronouns precede the verb; lē neg., not; iloa v.t., know; pē conj., introduces indirect questions; 'aumai v.t., bring; i fea 'from where' instead of 'where to' because 'aumai expresses a movement from a certain place to the speaker. When combined with 'go' i fea means 'where to'.

31 tālofa iā interj., have pity (on); fai v.t., do, make; masoā n., starch



'Ā mamago mea tatā,<sup>32</sup>  
'Āuli loa mo le Aso Sā<sup>33</sup>

When the washing is dry,  
(She) will iron it for Sunday.

#### 4.9 EXERCISES

##### EXERCISE 1: Substitute.

E mānaia le 'ofu o le teine.

The girl's dress is nice.

1. pa'epa'e
2. mūmū
3. samasama
4. lanumoana
5. uliuli

white  
red  
yellow  
blue  
black

'Ua palapalā le 'ie.<sup>34</sup>

The sarong is dirty.

6. māsae
7. leaga
8. pū
9. maua
10. leiloa

is torn  
is bad  
has a hole  
found  
lost

##### EXERCISE 2: Substitute.

'Ua 'uma le siva.

The dance is finished.

1. lotu
2. ā'oga
3. fono
4. fa'amasinoga
5. misa
6. ma'i
7. mea'ai
8. ta'aloga
9. tatalo
10. timu

church service  
school  
meeting  
court hearing  
quarrel, fight  
sickness  
food  
game  
prayer  
rain

<sup>32</sup> 'ā short form of the future particle; mago v.i. (pl. mamago), (be) dry; mea tatā n., washing, laundry (< mea thing, tatā pl. v., beat, be beaten; when washing clothes, Samoans beat them with a stick)

<sup>33</sup> 'āuli v.t., iron, n., iron; loa adv., then; mo prep., for; Aso Sā n., Sunday; note that you don't say 'she' in Samoan here, because it is clear from the context who will do the ironing.

<sup>34</sup> palapalā v.i., (be) dirty (with soil) (< palapala n., soil; 'ie n., cloth, also sarong, i.e. a piece of cloth men and women wear like a skirt.)

## EXERCISE 3: Substitute.

'Ua tīgā le ulu o le lo'omatua.

1. *le nifo*
2. *le lima*
3. *le vae*
4. *le manava*
5. *le papātua*
6. *le gutu*
7. *le mata*
8. *le isu*
9. *le tuli*
10. *le tino*

The head of the old lady is aching. (lit. The old lady has a headache.)

- tooth
- arm
- leg
- stomach
- back
- mouth
- eye
- nose
- knee
- body

## EXERCISE 4: Change.

*E uliuli le 'ie. → 'O le 'ie uliuli.*

1. *E pa'epa'e le pūlou. → ...*
2. *E mūmū le 'ofutino.<sup>35</sup>*
3. *E samasama le pea.<sup>36</sup>*
4. *E 'ena'ena le fusipa'u.<sup>37</sup>*
5. *E lanumeamata le 'ofuvae.<sup>38</sup>*
6. *E lanumoana le tōgiga.*
7. *E lanumoli le fa'amau.<sup>39</sup>*
8. *E lanupīniki le mitiafu.<sup>40</sup>*
9. *E 'ena'ena mālosi le sikafu.<sup>41</sup>*
10. *E lanumeamata vaivai le kola.<sup>42</sup>*

The sarong is black. → The black sarong.

- The hat is white.
- The shirt is red.
- The pair is yellow.
- The belt is brown.
- The pants are green.
- The uniform is blue.
- The button is orange.
- The T-shirt is pink.
- The scarf is dark brown.
- The collar is light green.

<sup>35</sup> 'ofutino n., shirt

<sup>36</sup> samasama v.i., (be) yellow; have the colour of turmeric; pea n., pair, women's dress consisting of a top and a matching sarong

<sup>37</sup> fusipa'u n., leather belt (< fusi v.t., bind, pa'u n., skin)

<sup>38</sup> meamata n., raw things, i.e. greens; vae n., leg; 'ofu vae n., pants

<sup>39</sup> fa'amau v.t., fasten, button, lock, n., button

<sup>40</sup> mitiafu n., T-shirt (miti 'suck', afu 'sweat')

<sup>41</sup> mālosi v.i., (be) strong, dark (in colour); sikafu n., scarf

<sup>42</sup> vaivai v.i., (be) weak, light (in colour); kola n., collar

EXERCISE 5: Translate. (Use the right tense particles. Don't worry about the translation of 'the' and 'a', use only *le*).

1. The car is yellow.
2. The bus is blue.
3. The dress is very long.
4. The uniform is dirty.
5. The dress is torn.
6. The dress is very dirty.
7. This thing is bad.
8. The food is good.
9. The girl is sick.
10. The boy is still sick.

EXERCISE 6: Translate.

1. *'O faigaluega ā lou tamā? – Leai, 'ua mānava.*
2. *'O moe? – Leai, 'ua alu i le fono.*
3. *E sau āfea? – I le pō.*
4. *'O fea tamaiti? – Lā e nonofo i le fale o le faife'au.*
5. *'O fea lou tinā? – Lā e fai le mea'ai.*

## LESSON 5

### 5.1 THE SPECIFIC AND NON-SPECIFIC, SINGULAR AND PLURAL ARTICLES

The articles distinguish between singular and plural and between specific (the) and non-specific (a/an) noun phrases:

<u>le</u> teine	(specific singular)	the girl, a (particular) girl
<u>se</u> teine	(non-specific singular)	a girl, any girl
teine	(specific plural)	the girls, (particular) girls, girls in general
<u>ni</u> teine	(non-specific plural)	some girls, any girls

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Specific	<i>le tama</i> the boy	<i>tama</i> the boys
Non-specific	<i>se tama</i> a boy	<i>ni tama</i> some, any boys

Note that there is no article for the specific plural, it is unmarked as in these examples:

<i>Sā nonofo <u>teine</u> i le fale.</i>	The <u>girls</u> stayed in the house.
<i>Sā sisiva <u>tamaiti</u>.</i>	The <u>children</u> danced.
<i>Sā faigaluega <u>tama</u>.</i>	The <u>boys</u> worked.
<i>E mālolosi <u>tama</u> Sāmoa.</i>	Samoan <u>boys</u> (in general) are strong.

The non-specific articles are typically used in commands, questions and negative sentences of the following kinds:

<i>'Aumai <u>se</u> niu!</i>	Bring <u>a</u> coconut!
<i>'Aumai <u>ni</u> niu!</i>	Bring <u>some</u> coconuts!
<i>E iai <u>se</u> mea 'ai a le teine? <sup>1</sup></i>	Is there <u>any</u> food for the girl?
<i>E leai <u>se</u> niu.</i>	There is no coconut. (lit. There isn't <u>a</u> coconut.)
<i>E leai <u>se</u> mea.</i>	There is nothing. (lit. There isn't <u>anything</u> .)

Apart from specific and non-specific articles Samoan has two others: *si* and *sina*. The plural of *si* is *nai*.

<sup>1</sup> *iai* v.i., exist, be there, often written as two words: *i ai*

'o <u>si</u> teine	(singular)	the little girl, the poor, dear girl
'o <u>nai</u> teine	(specific plural)	the poor, dear girls, a few girls
'o <u>ni nai</u> teine	(non-specific plural)	some poor, dear girls, a few girls
'o <u>sina</u> vai	(partitive)	a little water

'Ua ma'i si teine.	The poor girl is sick.
'Aumai sina vai.	Bring a little water.

## 5.2 Isi 'someone, other'

Depending on the context, the word *isi* means 'someone, somebody, anybody, some' or 'other'.

### (1) se isi 'someone, somebody, anybody; another'

Sau se isi fa'amolemole.	Somebody please come.
E leai se isi.	There is nobody.
'O iai se isi i le 'ōfisa? <sup>2</sup>	Is there anybody in the office?
Na sau se isi iate a'u? <sup>3</sup>	Did anyone come to (see) me?
'Ioe, na sau le tagata.	Yes, somebody came.
Leai, e le'i sau se isi. <sup>4</sup>	No, no one came. (lit. Somebody did not come.)
E iai se isi 'o fia mana'o i se ipu kofe? <sup>5</sup>	Is there anybody who would like a cup of coffee?
E te fia mana'o i se isi i pu kofe? <sup>6</sup>	Do you want another cup of coffee?
Fa'amolemole 'aumai se isi peni.	Please give me another pen.

### (2) nisi (< ni + isi) 'some, some others'

Fa'amolemole toe 'aumai nisi peni. <sup>7</sup>	Please bring some more pens.
E toe ō mai nisi tagata i le fono? <sup>8</sup>	Are there other people coming to the meeting?

<sup>2</sup> 'o TAM, short form of the tense particle 'olo'o

<sup>3</sup> ia te, iate prep., variant of i 'in, at, to', used with pronouns; a'u pron., I, me

<sup>4</sup> e le'i TAM + neg., did not

<sup>5</sup> fia mana'o adv. + v., would like; kofe n., coffee

<sup>6</sup> In a traditional Samoan household you wouldn't ask this question, but would just serve another cup of coffee.

<sup>7</sup> toe adv., more, again

<sup>8</sup> ō mai v.i. (pl.), come

*Na momoe nisi i le fale komiti?*<sup>9</sup>

*E leai se isi na moe ai.*<sup>10</sup>

Did any people sleep in the committee house?

Nobody slept there. (lit. There isn't anybody who slept there.)

(3) *le isi* 'the other (one)'

*Fa'aaogā le telefoni le a po'o le isi lale.*<sup>11</sup>

*E lē ola le telefoni lea.*

*Fa'aaogā le isi.*

*E lelei le isi?*

*'O fea le isi?*

*I le isi itū lale.*<sup>12</sup>

Use this telephone or the other over there.

This telephone does not work.

Use the other one.

Is the other one alright?

Where is the other one?

On the other side over there.

(4) *isi* 'the others, the other...(people or things)'

*E fa'amuli le lo'omatua ma isi tamaiti,  
'ae ō isi e faigaluega.*

*E iai isi tagata e ō mai i le fono.*

The old woman stayed behind with some children, but the others went to work.

There will be other people coming to the meeting.

(5) *le isi...le isi* 'one...the other', *isi...isi* 'some...others'

*Sā iai tamaiti e to'alua, e tauaso le isi,  
'ae logonoa le isi.*<sup>13</sup>

*E lelei isi, 'ae leaga isi.*

There were two children, one was blind and the other was deaf.

Some are good, and/but some are bad.

### 5.3 SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND VERBS

In §5.1 we saw that the difference between singular and plural noun phrases is expressed by articles. There are only nine nouns which have different singular and plural forms:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
1.	<i>'o le tamaitiiti</i>	<i>'o tamaiti</i>	child, boy
2.	<i>'o le teineitiiti</i>	<i>'o teineiti</i>	girl
3.	<i>'o le matua</i>	<i>'o mātua</i>	parent

<sup>9</sup> *moe* v.i. (pl. *momoe*), sleep

<sup>10</sup> *ai* anaph., there

<sup>11</sup> *fa'aaogā* v.t., use; *lale* dem., that over there

<sup>12</sup> *itū* n., side

<sup>13</sup> *e* TAM, cf. §10.1; *to'alua* num., two

4. 'o le lo'omatua	'o lo'omātutua	old woman
5. 'o le 'olomatua	'o 'olomātutua	old woman
6. 'o le toea'ina	'o toea'i'ina	old man
7. 'o le tuafafine	'o tuafāfine	sister of a man
8. 'o le tamāloa	'o tamāloloa	man
9. 'o le taule'ale'a	'o taulele'a	untitled man

Many verbs have different singular and plural forms. The plural is often formed by reduplication of the second to the last syllable:

SINGULAR	PLURAL	
'ai	'a'ai	eat
savali	sāvavali	walk
siva	sisiva	dance
alofa	āloloa	love
galue	gālulue	work
nofo	nonofo	sit, stay
moe	momoe	sleep
moe'umi	momoe'u'umi	sleep long
lāpo'a	lāpopo'a	(be) large, fat
pa'e'e	pā'e'e'e	(be) slim, skinny
mālosi	māloloasi	(be) strong, healthy
ma'i	mama'i	(be) sick
poto	popoto	(be) clever
valea	vālelea	(be) stupid

But there are many other ways to form the plural. Look at these forms (and learn them):

SINGULAR	PLURAL	
alu	ō	go
sau	ō mai	come
la'itiiti	lāiti	(be) small
pu'upu'u	pupu'u	(be) short
uliuli	uli	(be) black
'ena'ena	'e'ena	(be) brown
pa'epa'e	papa'e	(be) white
oti	feoti	die
inu	feinu	drink
tipi	tatipi	cut

*Sāmomoe 'u'umi tamaiti.*

The children slept a long time.

*Sā ō taulele 'a i uta i le fa'atoaga.<sup>14</sup>*

The young men went inland to the plantation.

*Sā gālulue tamāloloa i le togāfa'i.*

The men worked in the banana plantation.

The plural *tatipi* 'cut' is used when the object (the things cut) is plural.

*Tatipi lā'au.*

Cut the trees.

*Tatipi fa'amānifinifi talo.*

Cut the taro into thin slices.

The plural form is used with some noun phrases which have the singular article, but are plural in meaning, e.g. *'o le 'āiga* 'the family' and *'o le fānau* 'the offspring, children'.

*'O lo'o mālolosi le 'āiga 'ātoa.<sup>15</sup>*

The whole family is healthy.

*'Ua mātutua le fānau a Makerita.*

Margaret's children are grown up.

When these words follow a noun, they also agree with the noun in number:

*'o le tama la'itiiti*

the small boy

*'o tama lāiti*

the small boys

*'o le tagata poto*

the intelligent person

*'o tagata popoto*

the intelligent people

*'o le tamaitiiti moe 'umi*

the child who is sleeping a long time

*'o tamaiti momoe 'u'umi*

the children who are sleeping a long time

#### 5.4 'FRONT, BACK, TOP, INSIDE, OUTSIDE' – LOCAL NOUNS

Meanings like 'under', 'in front of' and 'behind' are expressed by nouns, which do not have an article and are combined with the possessive preposition *o*. In order to distinguish them from other nouns, we call them local nouns (l.n.).

*Va'ai i luma o le fale.*

look in front of the house

Look in front of the house.

*Va'ai i tua o le fale.*

Look behind the house.

*Va'ai i totonu o le fale.*

Look inside (of) the house.

*Va'ai i fafo o le fale.*

Look outside (of) the house.

*Tu'u le 'ato i luga o le laulau.*

Put the basket on (top of) the table.

*Tu'u le 'ato i lalo o le laulau.*

Put the basket under the table.

*Nofo i 'autafa o le moega.*

Sit beside the bed.

*Fa'atali i tala ane o le fale'oloa.*

Wait next to the shop.

<sup>14</sup> *uta* l.n., inland

<sup>15</sup> *'āiga* n., family; *'ātoa* v.i., (be) whole



Note that the two words 'ogātotonu 'middle' and vā 'space between two things, places or people' are different. They are always combined with the article *le*.

*Nofo i le 'ogātotonu o le potu.*

Sit in the middle (of) the room.

*Nofo i le vā o Pita ma Ioane.*

Sit between Peter and John.

*'O fea Samuelu?*

Where is Samuel?

*'O Samuelu lā e ta'alo i luma o le fale.<sup>16</sup>*

He is playing in front of the house.

*E leai se isi 'o i luma.<sup>17</sup>*

There is nobody at the front.

*Va'ai i tua o le fale.*

Look at the back of the house.

*E leai se isi.*

There is nobody.

*'O fea le lo'omatua?*

Where is the old woman?

*'O lae moe i totonu o le potu.*

She is sleeping there in the room.

*Tinā, 'o Samuelu lā e i luga o le lā'au.<sup>18</sup>*

Mother, Samuel is up in the tree.

*Sau i lalo.*

Come down.

### 5.5 'I AM NOT A FOOL' – NEGATION

*'O a'u 'o lou tinā.<sup>19</sup>*

I am your mother.

*E lē 'o a'u 'o lou tinā.*

I am not your mother.

As you learnt in §2.3, Samoan does not have a verb 'to be'. You simply say 'I your mother' when you want to say 'I am your mother'. Sentences like these are made negative by *e lē*; *e* is the tense particle *e* and *lē* the negation 'not'.

*'O 'oe 'o le vale.*

You are a fool.

*E lē 'o a'u 'o se vale.*

I am not a fool.

### 5.6 USEFUL PHRASES: *Fai le kuka* 'Do the cooking'

*Tipitipi le fasi povi.*

Chop the beef.

*Tipitipi fa'anini'i le fasi māmoē.*

Chop the mutton flaps into very small pieces.

*Tipi 'ese ponāivi o le moa.*

Cut off the chicken bones.

*Tipi le kāpisi.*

Cut the cabbage.

*Fa'avai lialia<sup>20</sup>*

Put the vermicelli in water.

*'Otile lialia.*

Cut (with the scissors) the vermicelli.

<sup>16</sup> *ta'alo* v.i., play, pl. *ta'a'alo*

<sup>17</sup> 'o TAM, short form of 'o lo'o

<sup>18</sup> *e* TAM

<sup>19</sup> *a'u* pron., I, me; *lou* poss.pron., your (sg.)

<sup>20</sup> *fa'avai* v.t., water, put into water (< *vai* n., water); *lialia* n., vermicelli (a kind of Asian noodle)

*Tu'itu'i le aniani Saina.*

*Fisi pateta.*<sup>21</sup>

*Valu talo, ta'amū, ufi, popo.*<sup>22</sup>

*Fofō'e fa'i.*<sup>23</sup>

*Fa'amāsima le pe'epe'e.*<sup>24</sup>

*Tu'u vai i le 'ulo.*

*Fa'ati'eti'e le 'ulo vai.*<sup>25</sup>

*'Ua pē le afi. Fa'aola le afi.*<sup>26</sup>

*Kī le 'ogāumu. Tapē le 'ogāumu.*<sup>27</sup>

*Palaka le tīpoti.*

*Fa'apuna le vai.*

*'Ua puna le vai.*

*Tu'u le kofe i totonu o le tīpoti.*

*Sasa'a i ai le vai vevela.*

*Sa'eu i se sipuni.*

*Fa'asuka ma fa'asusu.*

Pound the garlic.

Scrape the potatoes.

Scrape the taros, *ta'amus*, yams, coconuts.

Peel the bananas.

Salt the coconut cream.

Put water in the pot.

Place the pot of water (on the fire).

The fire went out. Light the fire.

Turn the oven on. Turn the oven off.

Plug the jug.

Boil the water.

The water is boiling.

Put the coffee in the teapot.

Pour the hot water in.

Stir with a spoon.

Add sugar and milk.

### 5.7 CONVERSATION: *Isa'ako, sau e 'ai!* 'Isaac, come and eat!'

*Isa'ako, sau e 'ai.*

*'O le ā le mea 'ai?*

*'O le fa'alifu fa'i.*<sup>28</sup>

*'O iai se pīsupo?*<sup>29</sup>

*Tālofa e i si tama. E leai se mea.*<sup>30</sup>

*Faia'ia, 'o le 'ā ma'alili le mea 'ai.*<sup>31</sup>

*'Ua lelei. 'Ua 'ou fia 'ai.*<sup>32</sup>

Isaac, come and eat.

What is the food?

It is bananas cooked in coconut cream.

Is there any corned beef?

Poor boy. There is nothing.

Hurry up, the food is getting cold.

Alright. I'm hungry.

<sup>21</sup> *fisi* v.t., skin, peel (with a knife)

<sup>22</sup> *ta'amū* n., large root similar to taro; *popo* n., ripe coconut (*niu* n. unripe coconut)

<sup>23</sup> *fofo'e* v.t., peel (with the hand or with a peeler)

<sup>24</sup> *fa'amāsima* v.t., put salt into (< *māsima* n., salt)

<sup>25</sup> *fa'ati'eti'e* v.t., make sit, place, put (< *ti'eti'e* v.i., sit (on s.th., not on the floor))

<sup>26</sup> *pē* v.i., die (of animals), go out (of fires); *fa'aola* v.t., make live; *ola* v.i., live

<sup>27</sup> *tapē* v.t., kill (of animals, put out (of fire) (< *pē* v.i., die, go out)

<sup>28</sup> *fa'alifu* n., a dish cooked in coconut cream

<sup>29</sup> *pīsupo* n., corned beef

<sup>30</sup> *tālofa* e exclamation to show pity; *i* the locative preposition

<sup>31</sup> *faia'ia* hurry up; *ma'alili* v.i., (be) cold

<sup>32</sup> *fia 'ai* v.i., want to eat, be hungry

## 5.8 EXERCISES

## EXERCISE 1: Substitute.

*'O fea le telefoni?**E leai se telefoni.*

1. *ta'avale*
2. *lēitio*
3. *pusa 'aisa*
4. *fā'ata*
5. *faleuila*
6. *potu tā'ele*
7. *potu moe*
8. *potu mālōlō*
9. *potu 'ai*
10. *umukuka*

Where is the telephone?There is no telephone.

- car
- radio
- fridge
- mirror
- toilet
- bathroom
- bedroom
- sitting room
- dining room
- kitchen

## EXERCISE 2: Substitute.

*'Aumai se naifi.*

1. *se sipuni*
2. *se tui*
3. *se ipu*
4. *se ipu māfolafola*
5. *se afitusi*
6. *se māsima*
7. *se seleulu*
8. *se nila*
9. *se filo*
10. *se lā'au su'isu'i*

Bring a knife.

- a spoon
- a fork
- a cup
- a plate
- a match
- some salt
- some scissors
- a needle
- a thread
- a sewing machine

## EXERCISE 3: Change the singular into the plural.

*E leai se naifi. → E leai ni naifi.*

1. *se sipuni*
2. *se tui*
3. *se ipu*
4. *se sikaleti*
5. *se afitusi*
6. *se 'aluga*

There are no knives.

- no spoons
- no forks
- no cups
- no cigarettes
- no matches
- no pillows

- |                                     |               |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|
| 7. <i>se fala</i>                   | no mats       |
| 8. <i>se 'ie 'afu</i> <sup>33</sup> | no sheets     |
| 9. <i>se moega</i>                  | no beds       |
| 10. <i>se fa'amalū</i>              | no mattresses |

EXERCISE 4: Change the singular into the plural.

1. *'Ua alu le teine i Apia.*
2. *E valea le teine.*
3. *Leai, e poto.*
4. *Na siva le fafine i le fale komiti.*
5. *'O le fafine lāpo'a.*
6. *'O lo'o savali le taule'ale'a i le 'auala.*
7. *'Ua pa'e'e, 'ua ma'i.*
8. *'O lo'o mālosi pea le lo'omatua.*

EXERCISE 5: Substitute.

*E gālulue taulele'a i le ma'umaga i aso 'uma.*

The young men work in the taro plantation every day.

- |                                      |                                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. <i>togāfa'i</i>                   | banana plantation <sup>34</sup> |
| 2. <i>togāniu</i>                    | coconut plantation              |
| 3. <i>togākāpisi</i>                 | cabbage garden                  |
| 4. <i>fale'aiga</i>                  | restaurant                      |
| 5. <i>faleā'oga</i>                  | school building                 |
| 6. <i>falegāosimea</i> <sup>35</sup> | factory                         |
| 7. <i>falefalaoa</i> <sup>36</sup>   | bakery                          |
| 8. <i>falema'i</i>                   | hospital                        |
| 9. <i>falepuipui</i> <sup>37</sup>   | prison                          |
| 10. <i>fale'inisinia</i>             | mechanic house                  |

<sup>33</sup> *'ie* n., cloth; *'afu* v.t., cover

<sup>34</sup> *togā-* n., garden, plantation (used in compounds)

<sup>35</sup> *falegāosimea* n., factory (house in which things are produced) (< *gāosi* v.t., make, produce)

<sup>36</sup> *falefalaoa* n., bakery (house in which bread is made) (< *falaoa* n. bread)

<sup>37</sup> *puipui* v.t., fence off, ward off

EXERCISE 6: Change the plural into the singular, then translate.

1. *E nonofo lo'omātutua i le fale.*
2. *E ō āfea toea'i'ina i le fono?*
3. *E ō āfea taulele'a i le togāfa'i?*
4. *E sisiva āfea tamaiti i le faleā'oga?*
5. *'O fea tama? Lāe nonofo i totonu o le fale.*
6. *Ō mai e fai le kuka.*
7. *'Aumai ni naifi.*
8. *Tatipi fa'amānifinifi aniani.*
9. *Tatipi lā'au.*
10. *'O fea ipu māfolafola?*

EXERCISE 7: Change the positive sentence into a negative one.

- |   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| <i>'O a'u 'o le vale. → E lē 'o a'u 'o se vale.</i> | I am not a fool.            |
| 1. <i>'O a'u 'o le gaoi.</i>                        | I am not a burglar.         |
| 2. <i>'O a'u 'o le pua'a.</i>                       | I am not a pig.             |
| 3. <i>'O a'u 'o le pālagi.</i>                      | I am not a white person.    |
| 4. <i>'O a'u 'o le 'Amerika.</i>                    | I am not an American.       |
| 5. <i>'O 'oe 'o le faia'oga.</i>                    | You are not a teacher.      |
| 6. <i>'O 'oe 'o le faima'umaga.</i>                 | You are not a taro planter. |
| 7. <i>'O 'oe 'o le 'onā leaga.</i>                  | You are not a bad drunk.    |
| 8. <i>'O 'oe 'o le pāgotā.</i>                      | You are not a prisoner.     |
| 9. <i>'O 'oe 'o le fafine.</i>                      | You are not a woman.        |
| 10. <i>'O a'u 'o le fafine.</i>                     | I am not a woman.           |

EXERCISE 8: Substitute.

*O fea la'u 'api?*

*'O lau 'api lenā e i luga o le moega.*

1. *i lalo o le moega*
2. *i totonu o le pusa*
3. *i tua o le tīvī*
4. *i le potu lā e i luma*
5. *i talane o le nofoa*

Where is my exercise book?

Your exercise book is on the bed.

- under the bed
- in the box
- behind the television
- in the front room
- beside the chair

*'O fea le kī o le fale?*

6. *'O le kī lae i lalo o le fala.*

7. *i totonu o le ta'avale*

8. *i luga o le laulau*

9. *i talane o le fata tusi*

10. *i 'autafa o Sione*

Where is the key of the house?

The key is under the mat.

inside the car

on the table

next to the bookshelf

beside John

## LESSON 6

### 6.1 'I AND YOU' – INDEPENDENT PRONOUNS

The system of pronouns is more complex in Samoan than in English, and it will take some effort to learn them.

Independent pronouns	<i>a'u</i>	I, me
Preverbal pronouns	<i>Sā 'ou alu.</i>	I went.
Possessive pronouns	<i>'o lo'u tinā</i>	my mother

In this lesson, we deal with independent pronouns.

*'O a'u 'o se faiā'oga.* I am a teacher.

*'O lātou 'o ni faiā'oga.* They are teachers.

*E ō tā'ua!* We (two) will go!

*E ō tātou!* We (more than two) will go!

*E ō 'oulua?* Are you (two) going?

*E ō 'outou?* Are you (more than two) going?

In simple verbal clauses the independent pronouns always follow the verb.

1 sg.	<i>a'u</i>	I, me
1 sg.em.	<i>'ita, ta'ita</i>	(poor) me
2 sg.	<i>'oe</i>	you
3 sg.	<i>ia</i>	he, she, it
1 du.inc.	<i>tā'ua ('i tā'ua)</i>	we two (I and you)
1 du.exc.	<i>mā'ua ('i mā'ua)</i>	we two (but not you)
2 du.	<i>'oulua</i>	you two
3 du.	<i>lā'ua ('i lā'ua)</i>	they two
1 pl.inc.	<i>tātou ('i tātou)</i>	we (I and you)
1 pl.exc.	<i>mātou ('i mātou)</i>	we (I and them)
2 pl.	<i>'outou</i>	you (more than two)
3 pl.	<i>lātou ('i lātou)</i>	they (more than two)

The forms in brackets show variants which are not as frequently used as the other forms.

The personal independent pronouns distinguish between singular (sg.), dual (du.) and plural (pl.), and between inclusive (inc.) and exclusive (exc.). Dual means that two people are involved; exclusive that the person spoken to is excluded ('not you, only us'); and inclusive that he or she is included ('I and you, we and you').

There are two forms for 'I': *a'u* is the common form, and *'ita* or *ta'ita* an emotional form (em.) which is used by speakers when they are emotionally involved, or want to express humility or appeal for help.

## 6.2 THE PREPOSITION *i* WITH PROPER NAMES AND PRONOUNS

The preposition *i* 'in, at, to' changes to *iā* and *iate* in front of pronouns. The form *iate* (often written *ia te*) is usually used with the singular pronouns, whereas *iā* is more frequently used with dual and plural pronouns.

*'Aumai le tusi ia te a'u!*

Bring/give me the letter!

*'Ave le mea'ai iā lātou!*

Take the food to them!

The form *iā* is also used with proper names referring to people.

*'Ave le tusi iā Seu!*

Give the letter to Seu!

*Lafo le tupe iā Makerita!*

Send the money to Margaret!

## 6.3 THE NAMES OF DAYS OF THE WEEK AND MONTHS

The names of the days of the week behave like common nouns and are combined with the article *le*, whereas the names of months are treated like proper names and do not have an article. Similarly to proper names, the names of months take the preposition *iā*.

*le Aso Sā*

Sunday

*le Aso Gafua*

Monday

*le Aso Lua*

Tuesday

*le Aso Lulu*

Wednesday

*le Aso Tofi*

Thursday

*le Aso Faraile*

Friday

*le Aso To'ona'i*

Saturday

The names of days of the week can be used in the plural.

*Sau i le Aso Tofi.*

Come on Thursday.

*Sau i Aso Tofi.*

Come on Thursdays.

*E alu le va'a i le Aso To'ona'i.*

The boat goes on Saturday.

*E alu le va'a i Aso To'ona'i.*

The boat goes on Saturdays.



*E fai ta'aloga lakapī i Aso Lulu 'uma.*<sup>1</sup>

They play rugby on all Wednesdays.  
(Rugby plays are done on all Wednesdays.)

'o Ianuari	January
'o Fepuari	February
'o Mati	March
'o 'Aperila	April
'o Mē	May
'o Iuni	June
'o Iulai	July
'o 'Aukuso	August
'o Sētema	September
'o 'Oketopa	October
'o Nōvema	November
'o Tēsema	December

<i>iā Ianuari</i>	in January
<i>iā Fepuari</i>	in February
<i>iā Mati</i>	in March
<i>iā 'Aperila</i>	in April
<i>iā Mē</i>	in May
<i>iā Iuni</i>	in June
<i>iā Iulai</i>	in July
<i>iā 'Aukuso</i>	in August
<i>iā Sētema</i>	in September
<i>iā 'Oketopa</i>	in October
<i>iā Nōvema</i>	in November
<i>iā Tēsema</i>	in December

*E sau lo'u tamā iā Nōvema.*

My father comes in November.

*E fai le lotu tamaiti i le māsina 'o 'Oketopa.*

The children's service (White Sunday) is held in the month of October.

#### 6.4 'THE BOY LOVES THE GIRL' – VERBS EXPRESSING EMOTIONS

The preposition *i*, (and its variants *iā*, *iate*; in slow speech *'i*, *'iā*, *'iate*) is also used to mark the objects of verbs of emotion.

*E alofa le tama i le teine.*

The boy loves the girl.

*E alolofa 'uma tama iā Sina.*

The boys all love Sina.

*Sā ita le tinā i le tama.*

The mother was angry with the boy.

*Sā feita mātua i tamaiti.*

The parents were angry with the children.

You can also change the word order and say:

*E alofa i le teine le tama.*

The boy loves the girl.

*Sā ita i le tama le tinā.*

The mother was angry with the boy.

Here are some of the most frequently used verbs of emotion:

<i>alofa</i> (pl. <i>alolofa</i> )	love	<i>ita</i> (pl. <i>feita</i> )	be angry with
<i>fefe</i> (pl. <i>fefefe</i> )	be scared of	<i>mā</i> (pl. <i>mamā</i> )	be ashamed of
<i>fiafia</i>	like, be happy with	<i>mimita</i> (pl. <i>femita</i> )	be proud of
<i>fiu</i>	be fed up with	<i>musu</i> (pl. <i>mumus</i> )	sulk, do not like
<i>'ino'ino</i>	hate, dislike	<i>popole</i>	be worried about

<sup>1</sup> *fai* v.t., do; be done (there is no passive in Samoan, §13.1); *'uma* v., all

*E mimita le fafine i tūlaga o lana fānau i le ā'oga.*<sup>2</sup>

The woman is proud of her children's placings in the school.

*E mā le fafine i amio a lana fānau.*<sup>3</sup>

The woman is ashamed of her children's behaviour.

*E 'ino'ino le fafine i amio a le teine.*

The woman dislikes the behaviour of the girl.

*E fefe le tama i lona tamā.*

The child is afraid of his father.

*E fefefe tamaiti i le faia'oga.*

The children are afraid of the teacher.

Other common verbs which are used with the preposition *i* ('i') are *va'ai* 'to see', *fa'alogo* 'hear, listen', and *mana'o* 'want'.

*Va'ai i le ata lea.*<sup>4</sup>

Look at this picture.

*Fa'alogo i 'upu a lou tamā.*

Listen to the words of your father.

*E mana'o i se ipu kofe le fafine.*

The woman wants a cup of coffee.

#### 6.5 'FOR MARY' – THE PREPOSITIONS *ma* AND *mo* 'for'

The prepositions *ma* and *mo* both mean 'for'. The difference between them is similar to that of the two possessive prepositions *a* and *o* (cf. Lesson 3). Compare:

*'Ave ma Mālia le mea'ai.*

Give (him or her) the food for Mary.  
(Typically said by older people to children doing errands.)

*'Ave le mea'ai ma Mālia.*

Give the food for Mary.

*'O le mea'ai a Mālia.*

Mary's food.

*'Aumai ma a'u lau mea'ai.*

Let me have your food. (Typically said by older people to children who want to test if they would share their food.)

*'o le fale'olua fou mo le nu'u*

the new shop for the village

*'o le fale'olua fou o le nu'u*

the new shop of the village

In connection with food, *ma* means that the food is meant for someone to eat. Otherwise *ma* expresses that something is given to someone to use it or be its new owner. The preposition *mo* has a wider range of meaning. It can mean 'for the benefit of someone', 'for a certain purpose', 'for a certain price', or 'for some time'.

*'Ave le 'ofu o lo'u tinā ma Makerita.*

Give (him or her) my mother's dress for Margaret (to wear).

*'O le tupe lea ma le tamāloa.*<sup>5</sup>

This is the money for the man.

<sup>2</sup> *tūlaga* n., position, placing; situation

<sup>3</sup> *amio* n., behaviour

<sup>4</sup> *ata* n., picture

<sup>5</sup> *tupe* n., money

'O le tupe lea mo le mea'ai.

This is the money for the food.

'O le tupe na fa'aaogā mo le falesā.

The money was used for the church.

Sāuni mo le su'ega.<sup>6</sup>

Prepare for the exam.

Na sisiva tamaiti mo le 'au vala'aulia.<sup>7</sup>

The children danced for the invited guests.

'O le mea'ai mo le aso 'ātoa.

The food for the whole day.

## 6.6 THE DIRECTIONAL PARTICLES *mai* AND *atu*

Verbs can be combined with directional particles, i.e. particles expressing the direction of an action or a movement. The most common ones are *mai* and *atu*.

*mai* 'towards me; to the place where I am now; to the place I am talking about now'

*atu* 'towards you, away from the place where I am now; away from the place I am talking about now'

With verbs of speaking *mai* means that something is said to me and *atu* that something is said to you, or that you say something to someone else.

*Fai mai le toea'ina e mānaia le fale.*

The old man said (to me) the house is beautiful.

*Fai mai Simi e sau taeao.*

Jimmy said (to me) he will come tomorrow.

*Fai atu i le teine e leai se pasi.*

Tell the girl there is no bus.

*Sā fai atu le tamāloa e leai se mea.*

The man told you there is nothing.

*Sau e ta'u mai le fe'au.<sup>8</sup>*

Come and tell me the message.

*Alu e ta'u atu i le faife'au le mea 'ua tupu.<sup>9</sup>*

Go and tell the pastor what happened (the thing that has happened).

The verb *fa'atau* means 'to trade', i.e. 'to buy' and 'to sell'. In order to distinguish between 'buy' and 'sell' you can use *mai* and *atu*:

*Alu e fa'atau mai se suka.*

Go and buy some sugar.

*Sā fa'atau mai le falaoa.*

He/she bought the bread.

*E fa'atau atu le ta'avale mo le valu afe tālā.<sup>10</sup>*

The car will be sold for \$8,000.

*Fa'atau atu i le tamaitiiti le peni lea.*

Sell this pen to the child.

The verbs *vave* 'be fast, early' and *tuai* 'be late' are often translated by 'come early' and 'come late' when they are combined with *mai* and *atu*.

<sup>6</sup> *sāuni* v.t., prepare s.th., v.i., get yourself prepared; *su'ega* n., exam

<sup>7</sup> *'au vala'aulia* n., guests (< *'au* n., group, team + *vala'aulia* v.t., invite, be invited (cf. §13.1))

<sup>8</sup> *ta'u* v.t., tell s.th.; *fe'au* 1. n., message, 2. n., duty, s.th. you have to do for somebody else

<sup>9</sup> *tupu* v.i., grow, happen

<sup>10</sup> *fa'atau* v.t., buy, be bought, sell, be sold (there is no distinction between active and passive in Samoan, cf. §13.1.); *valu* num., eight; *afe* num., thousand; *tālā* n., dollar

*Vave mai i le fale e fai le tāgamea.*

*Na vave mai le faia'oga i le fono.*

*Na vave atu Simi i le falema'i?*

*'O le 'ā vave atu le pasi taeao.*

*E tuai mai le malaga a le Palemia.<sup>11</sup>*

*Fai mai Sione sā tuai mai i le lotu ananafi.<sup>12</sup>*

*Na tuai atu le tama i le ā'oga ananafi.*

*O le 'ā tuai atu le tiliva falaoa taeao.<sup>13</sup>*

Come home early to do the washing.

The teacher came early to the meeting (held at the place I am talking about now).

Did Jimmy come early to the hospital (the place where you were at that time)?

The bus will leave early tomorrow (for your place).

The Prime Minister will come late from his trip. (lit. The Prime Minister's trip will be late.)

Sione said he came late to church yesterday.

The boy was late to school yesterday.

The bread delivery will be late tomorrow (to your place).

Try to understand and to memorise the use of *mai* and *atu* with the verb *fa'atali* 'wait':

*fa'atali mai*

1. 'wait for me at your place' (I am not at your place now, but I'll come to your place); 2. 'someone waits at the place I am talking about for something or someone to come to him'

*fa'atali atu*

'wait for me' (I'll go away now, but I'll come back to you)

*Fai i le lo'omatua e fa'atali mai.*

Tell the old woman to wait.

*Na fa'atali mai le fōma'i i le līpoti.<sup>14</sup>*

The doctor waited for the report.

*Fa'atali atu i le fale e va'ai tamaiti.*

Wait in the house and mind the children.

## 6.7 THE PREPOSITION *mai* 'from'

The preposition *mai* 'from' is directly connected with common nouns, placenames and the word *fea* 'where'. In addition, names of persons and the interrogative pronoun *ai* 'who?' require the preposition *iā* in addition.

*Mai fea le tama?*

Where is the boy from?

*'O le tama e sau mai Niu Sila.*

The boy comes from New Zealand.

*E sau mai fea Makerita?*

Where is Margaret from?

*'O Makerita e sau mai 'Ausetālia.*

Margaret is from Australia.

*Na 'aumai mai fea le naifi?*

From where did (you) get the knife?

<sup>11</sup> *malaga* n., trip, travel

<sup>12</sup> *lotu* n., church service; *ananafi* t.n., yesterday

<sup>13</sup> *tiliva* n., delivery

<sup>14</sup> *līpoti* n., report

'O le naifi na 'aumai mai le fale'olua.<sup>15</sup>  
 Na fa'atau mai fea le falaoa?  
 'O le falaoa na fa'atau mai iā Makesi.  
 Mai iā ai le 'ofu?  
 'O le 'ofu mai iā Simi.

The knife is from the shop.  
 Where did you buy the bread from?  
 The bread was bought from Mackenzies.  
 From whom did you get the dress?  
 The dress is from Jimmy.

## 6.8 CONVERSATION: 'O fea le lo'omatua? 'Where is the old woman?'

'Oi, se mālō ali'i Iulio.  
 'O ā mai 'oe?  
 'O lo'o manuia lava, fa'afetai.  
 'O fea le lo'omatua?  
 'O lo'o alu i le taulaga.<sup>16</sup>  
 Na'o 'oe i le fale?<sup>17</sup>  
 'O lea lava. Na'o a'u.  
 Mata e vave mai le lo'omatua?<sup>18</sup>  
 Masalo. Na vave alu i le taeao.<sup>19</sup>  
 'Oi, 'a'o fea tamaiti?  
 'O lā e gālulue i le ma'umaga.

Oh, greetings to you sir, Julius.  
 How are you?  
 I'm very well, thank you.  
 Where is the old woman?  
 She is going to town.  
 (Is it) just you in the house?  
 That is so. Just me.  
 Do you think the old woman will be back early?  
 Maybe. She left early in the morning.  
 Oh, but where are the children?  
 They are working in the taro plantation.

## 6.9 EXERCISES

### EXERCISE 1: Substitute.

'O lātou 'o tagata 'Ausetālia.

They are Australians (Australian people).

1. Saina
2. Iāpani
3. Siāmani
4. Peretānia
5. Niu Sila
6. Pāpua Niu Kini
7. Fiti

- Chinese  
 Japanese  
 Germans  
 British  
 New Zealanders  
 Papua New Guineans  
 Fijians

<sup>15</sup> na 'aumai ...where did you get...? – note that in a question like this it is not necessary to use a pronoun expressing 'you'  
<sup>16</sup> taulaga n., town, harbour  
<sup>17</sup> na'o adv., only  
<sup>18</sup> mata adv., do you think  
<sup>19</sup> masalo adv., maybe

- |              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| 8. To'elau   | Tokelauans |
| 9. 'Āsia     | Asians     |
| 10. 'Amerika | Americans  |

EXERCISE 2: Substitute.

*E fiafia tele le teine i le koko Sāmoa.*

1. i le fa'alifu talo
2. i le fa'alifu fa'i
3. i le lu'au<sup>20</sup>
4. i le oka
5. i le moa
6. i le pua'a
7. i le māmoe
8. i le sōsisi
9. i le sapaui
10. i le sālali fuālā'au

The girl likes Samoan cocoa very much.

- taro with coconut cream
- banana with coconut cream
- palusami*
- raw marinated fish
- chicken
- pork
- mutton flaps
- sausage
- chop suey
- vegetable salad

EXERCISE 3: Substitute.

*'O le meaālofa mo 'oe.*

1. 'oulua
2. 'outou
3. ia
4. lā'ua
5. lātou
6. a'u
7. tā'ua
8. tātou
9. mā'ua
10. mātou

The present for you (sg.).

- you (du.)
- you (pl.)
- him/her
- them (du.)
- them (pl.)
- me
- us (du.inc.)
- us (pl.inc.)
- us (du.exc.)
- us (pl.exc.)

EXERCISE 4: Substitute.

*E alofa Sina i le tama.*

1. ita
2. mā
3. fiafia

Sina loves the boy.

- hates
- is ashamed because of
- likes

---

<sup>20</sup> lu'au n., *palusami*, i.e. taro leaves with coconut cream

- |                       |                            |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 4. <i>musu</i>        | doesn't like               |
| 5. <i>mana'o</i>      | wants                      |
| 6. <i>pepelo</i>      | lies to                    |
| 7. <i>fa'amāoni</i>   | is truthful/honest to      |
| 8. <i>taufā'alili</i> | makes fun of               |
| 9. <i>taufā'ase'e</i> | pretends to be truthful to |
| 10. <i>fefe</i>       | is frightened/scared of    |

## EXERCISE 5: Substitute.

*'O fea lou tamā?**'O lo'u tamā lā e i le lotu.*

1. *i le ma'umaga*
2. *i le togāfa'i*
3. *i le fono*
4. *i Apia*
5. *i le falema'i*

*'O lo'u tamā lā e moe.*

6. *fāgota*
7. *faigaluega*
8. *tafao i le Tusitala*
9. *ta'alo*
10. *toleni*

Where is your father?

My father is at the church service.

- in the taro plantation
- in the banana plantation
- in the meeting
- in Apia
- in the hospital

My father is sleeping.

- is fishing
- is working
- has gone out to the Tusitala
- is playing
- is jogging

## EXERCISE 6: Translate.

1. We (du.exc.) are sisters. We (pl.exc.) are sisters.
2. They (du.) are brothers. They (pl.) are brothers.
3. This is the present from them (pl.).
4. This is the present for you (sg./du./pl.).
5. The boy hates me/us (du.inc./pl.inc.).
6. The teacher is angry with you (sg./du./pl.).
7. Where does the doctor come from?
8. (He) comes from China.
9. (He) is waiting for his wife and his children to come from New Zealand.
10. The doctor likes *palusami* very much.

EXERCISE 7: Insert *mai* or *atu* into the blank space and translate. The brackets contain some information about the situation.

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Alu e fa'atau ___ se suka.</i>               | (We don't have any sugar.)            |
| 2. <i>E tuai ___ le faiā'oga.</i>                  | (We are waiting for the teacher.)     |
| 3. <i>Fa'atali ___ i le fale.</i>                  | (I have to go now, but I'll be back.) |
| 4. <i>Ta'u ___ i le fōma'i ' o Simi e ma'i.</i>    | (I cannot talk to the doctor.)        |
| 5. <i>Tuli ___ le pusi i fafo fa'amolemole.</i>    | (The cat is a nuisance here.)         |
| 6. <i>Alu e fa'atau ___ iā Sina le lēitiō lea.</i> | (I don't need this radio.)            |
| 7. <i>Fa'atali ___ iā Sione.</i>                   | (John is coming.)                     |
| 8. <i>Na fai ___ le faife'au e leai se lotu.</i>   | (I am not going to church.)           |

EXERCISE 8: Substitute.

*'Ua ita Sina iate a'u.*

Sina is angry with me.

- |                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. <i>iate 'oe</i>  | with you          |
| 2. <i>iā tā'ua</i>  | with us (du.inc.) |
| 3. <i>iā mā'ua</i>  | with us (du.exc.) |
| 4. <i>iā lā'ua</i>  | with them (du.)   |
| 5. <i>iā 'oulua</i> | with you (du.)    |
| 6. <i>iā tātou</i>  | with us (pl.inc.) |
| 7. <i>iā mātou</i>  | with us (pl.exc.) |
| 8. <i>iā lātou</i>  | with them (pl.)   |
| 9. <i>iā 'outou</i> | with you (pl.)    |
| 10. <i>iā Paulo</i> | with Paul         |



## LESSON 7

### 7.1 'I WENT TO APIA' – PREVERBAL PRONOUNS

*Sā alu 'oe i le ā'oga?*

Did you go to school?

*Sā 'e alu i le ā'oga?*

Did you go to school?

In the first example 'you' is expressed by an independent pronoun ('oe), and in the second one by a preverbal pronoun ('e). You might hear the independent pronoun in sentences like this, when adults speak to little children or to foreigners, but the more common form is the preverbal pronoun. With the exception of the tense particle *e*, the preverbal pronoun always comes after the tense particle and before the verb.

*Sā 'ou alu i Apia.*

I went to Apia.

*Sā 'ou ma'i.*

I was sick.

*Tā ō!*

Let's go ((du.inc.) the two of us)!

*Tātou ō!*

Let's go ((pl.inc.) all of us)!

1sg.	'ou, o'u, -'u	I
1sg.em.	ta	I (poor me)
2sg.	'e, e	you
3sg.	ia, na	he, she, it
1du.inc.	tā	we two (I and you)
1du.exc.	mā	we two (but not you)
2du.	lua	you two
3du.	lā	they two
1pl.inc.	tātou	we (I, you and others)
1pl.exc.	mātou	we (but not you)
2pl.	tou	you
3pl.	lātou	they

With preverbal pronouns the tense particle *e* changes to *te*, which then follows the pronoun.

'Ou te alu i Sāmoa i le vaiaso lea.

I'll go to Samoa next week.

'E te toe sau āfea?

When do you come again?

'Ou te sau iā 'Aukuso.

I'll come in August.

Lātou te ō i Niu Sila.

They will go to New Zealand.

When following the past tense particles *sā* and *na*, 'ou is shortened to 'u in fast spoken language.

Na 'ou sau anapō.

I came last night.

Na'u sau anapō.

Sā 'ou moe i le potu.

I slept in the room.

Sa'u moe i le potu.

## 7.2 'SINA AND I' – COORDINATION OF PRONOUNS AND NOUNS

Compare the Samoan expressions with their English translations and look at the number of the Samoan and the English pronouns. What is different?

Na mā ō i le siva.

We went to the dance.

'Oulua ma ai?

Who was with you?

Mā'ua ma Sina.

I was with Sina. (lit. I and Sina.)

Sā mātou ō i le tūfaga ananafi.<sup>1</sup>

We went to the movies yesterday.

'Outou ma ai?

Who was with you?

Mātou ma Sina ma Makerita.

I was with Sina and Margaret.

Mātou ma tamaiti.

I was with the children.

Mātou ma le lo'omatua.

We were with the old woman.

'O 'outou e ō i le lotu.

You (pl.) are going to church.

Mātou ma ai?

We and who else?

'Outou ma lo'omātutua.

You and the old women.

'Outou ma le lo'omatua ma tamaiti.

You, the old woman and the children.

Na alu le teineitiiti i Apia.

The girl went to Apia.

Lā'ua ma ai?

She and who else?

Lā'ua ma le toea'ina.

She and the old man.

Na alu Tala e ta'alo lakapī.

Tala went to play rugby.

Na'o ia?

Just him?

Leai, lātou ma Felise ma Samuelu.

No, he and Felix and Samuel.

<sup>1</sup> ananafi t.n., yesterday

In Samoan, the pronoun refers to the total number of people. In English you say 'Sina and I'. In Samoan you think of two people and use the dual pronoun *mā'ua* 'we two', and then you add who you are talking about besides yourself, e.g. *ma Sina* 'and Sina'. Similar constructions are used with preverbal pronouns.

*Mā te ō i Sini ma Leona.*

Leona and I will go to Sydney.

*Lua te toe ō mai ma le teine?*

Will you and the girl come again?

*'Ua mā tēte'a ma Simi.<sup>2</sup>*

Simi and I are divorced.

*Mātou te ō ma tamaiti.*

I will go with the children.

*Tou te ō ma tamaiti i Apia?*

Are you going with the children to Apia?

### 7.3 TWO WAYS OF EXPRESSING 'WANT'

The meaning of 'want' is expressed in two different ways. You use the word *fia* immediately preceding the verb to say that someone wants to do something.

*'E te fia 'ai?*

Do you want to eat?

*Lua te fia 'a'ai ma Sina?*

Do you and Sina want to eat?

*'Ou te fia 'ai.*

I am hungry. (lit. I want to eat.)

*Mā te fia 'a'ai ma le teine.*

The girl and I are hungry.

*'Ou te fia inu.*

I am thirsty. (lit. I want to drink.)

*'Ou te fia ola! Fia ola! or*

Help! I want to live!

*Ta te fia ola!*

Help! Poor me, I want to live!

If someone wants something or somebody, you use the verb *mana'o* with the preposition *i*. With names of people *i* changes to *iā*.

*'Ou te mana'o i le mea lea.*

I want this (thing).

*'E te mana'o i se fasi falaoa?*

Do you want a piece of bread?

*'Ou te mana'o iā Fotu ma Leilani.*

I want Fotu and Leilani.

The two words *fia* and *mana'o* can be combined.

*'E te fia mana'o i se ipu kofe?*

Would you like a cup of coffee?

*'Ou te fia mana'o i le pule.*

I want (to see) the boss.

*Ta te fia mana'o lava i se 'aisikulimi.*

I really want an ice-cream.

### 7.4 EMPHASIS OF NOUN PHRASES

All verbal clauses we have learnt so far started with the verb phrase. For emphasis, the sentence can, however, also start with a noun phrase. This noun phrase is marked by 'o.

<sup>2</sup> *tēte'a* v.i. (pl.), be separated, divorced

Na alu i Apia lou tinā?  
 Leai, 'o lo'u tamā na alu i Apia,  
 'a 'o lo'u tinā na nofo i le fale.

Did your mother go to Apia?  
 No, my father went to Apia,  
 but my mother stayed at home.

'O ai na vili mai?  
 'O Tāvita na vili mai.

Who rang?  
David rang.

### 7.5 'WHERE AND WHEN?', 'WHO AND WHAT?'

Compare the following pairs of clauses. Which changes do you observe when the phrases *i le fale*, *i le Aso Sā* are shifted to the beginning of the clause? The preposition *i* is changed to 'o, and the verb is followed by ai.

Sā nofo le fafine i le fale o Lima.  
 'O le fale o Lima sā nofo ai le fafine.

The woman stayed at Lima's house.  
It was Lima's house where the woman stayed.

'Ou te alu i le Aso Sā.  
 'O le Aso Sā 'ou te alu ai.

I will go on Sunday.  
On Sunday I'll go.

This rule also applies to questions.

'E te nofo i fea?  
 'O fea 'e te nofo ai?

Where do you live?  
Where do you live?

'E te alu āfea?  
 'O āfea 'e te alu ai?

When are you going?  
When are you going?

Na 'e alu anafea?  
 'O anafea na 'e alu ai?

When did you go?  
When did you go?

Note that phrases with the preposition *i* do not always refer to places or a certain time (cf. §6.4.):

'Ou te mana'o i le fasi falaoa lea.  
 'O le fasi falaoa lea 'ou te mana'o ai.

I want this piece of bread.  
This piece of bread is what I want.

If the phrase expresses the goal of some movement, or refers to something or somebody a person sees, hears or talks to, *ai* takes the preposition *i* (or in slow speech 'i). Compare:

'O fea na nofo ai lou tamā?  
 'O fea na alu i ai lou tamā?  
 'O fea 'e te alu i ai?  
 'O ai na 'e va'ai i ai?

Where did your father stay?  
Where did your father go?  
Where are you going?  
Who did you see?

'O le leo o ai na 'e fa'alogo i ai?<sup>3</sup>

'O ai na 'e fesili i ai?<sup>4</sup>

'O ai na 'e talanoa i ai?<sup>5</sup>

Whose voice did you hear?

Who did you ask?

Who did you talk to?

Finally *ai* is used in so-called relative clauses. Compare the following pairs of sentences.

'Ou te mana'o i le mea lea.

'O le ā le mea 'e te mana'o ai?

I want this thing.

What do you want? (lit. What is the thing you want it?)

Sā 'ou sau i le taimi sa'o.

Ta'u mai le taimi sa'o na 'e sau ai.

I came at the correct time.

Tell me the correct time you came at it.

Na 'e va'ai i le mea lea.

'O le ā le mea na 'e va'ai i ai?

You saw this thing.

What did you see? (lit. What is the thing you saw it?)

Ta'u mai le mea na 'e va'ai i ai.

Tell me what you saw (lit. Tell me the thing you saw it).

Na 'e fesili i le tamāloa lale.

'O ai le tamāloa na 'e fesili i ai?

You asked that man.

Who was the man you asked (him)?

## 7.6 'NOT' – NEGATIONS

The two negations *lē* 'not' and *le'i* 'not yet' precede the verb.

'Ou te lē fia 'ai.

'Ou te lē mana'o i le mea lea.

'Ou te lē iloa se mea.

I don't want to eat.

I don't want this thing.

I don't know a thing.

'Ua sau Tāvita?

Leai, e le'i sau.

'Ou te le'i va'ai i ai.

'Ua tuai mai.

'Ua vili mai Fuamātala?

E le'i vili mai.

Na vili atu Sose ia te 'oe?

E le'i vili mai ia te a'u.

Has David come?

No, he hasn't come yet.

I haven't seen him.

He is late.

Has Fuamatala rung (us here)?

She didn't ring yet.

Did Sose ring you (there)?

She didn't ring me yet.

<sup>3</sup> leo n., voice

<sup>4</sup> fesili (i) v.i., ask (s.o.)

<sup>5</sup> talanoa (i) v.i., talk (to s.o.)

The word *leai* 'there is not' forms negative sentences.

*E leai se mea.*

There is nothing (lit. not a thing).

*E leai se tagata.*

There isn't anybody (lit. not a person).

*E leai se tagata sã va' ai i le mea lea.*

Nobody saw this. (lit. There isn't anybody who saw this.)

*E leai se tagata sã 'ou va' ai i ai.*

I didn't see anybody. (lit. There isn't a person I saw.)

*E leai se mea e popole ai.*

There isn't anything to worry about.

*E leai se mea na 'ou va' ai i ai.*

I did not see anything. (lit. There isn't anything I saw.)

*E leai se mea 'ou te mana' o ai.*

I don't want anything.

*E leai se mea' ai 'o totoe.<sup>6</sup>*

There is no food left.

### 7.7 CONVERSATION: 'O fea 'e te sau ai? 'Where do you come from?'

*'O fea 'e te sau ai?*

Where do you come from?

*'Ou te sau mai 'Ausetãlia.*

I come from Australia.

*'O fea 'o 'e nofo ai?*

Where are you staying?

*'O lo' o 'o' u nofo i le faletalimãlõ.<sup>7</sup>*

I am staying at the hotel.

*'O le ã le 'umi 'o 'e i 'inei?<sup>8</sup>*

How long have you been here? (lit. What is the length you are being here?)

*E le' i 'umi.*

Not long.

*'O le ã le 'umi 'e te nofo ai?*

How long are you going to stay?

*E lua tausaga.<sup>9</sup>*

Two years. (lit. The years are two.)

*'E te fiafia i 'inei?*

Do you like it here?

*Feoloolo.<sup>10</sup>*

It's not too bad.

*'Aiseã?*

Why?

*E vevela tele.*

It's too hot.

*E iai sou ãiga?*

Do you have a family?

*Eleai.*

No.

*E te nofo na' o 'oe?<sup>11</sup>*

Do you live by yourself?

*'Ioe.*

Yes.

<sup>6</sup> *totoe* v.i., be left

<sup>7</sup> *faletalimãlõ* n. hotel (< *fale* n., house + *tali* v.t., receive + *mãlõ* n., guest)

<sup>8</sup> 'o short form of 'o lo'o; 'inei l.n., here

<sup>9</sup> *lua* num., two; *tausaga* n., year

<sup>10</sup> *feoloolo* v.i., (be) not too bad, fairly good

<sup>11</sup> *na' o* adv., only

7.8 CONVERSATION: *Tafaoga i le Tusitala* 'Going out to Tusitala'<sup>12</sup>

<i>Mika, na 'ou va'ai i ā 'oe i le Tusitala anapō.</i>	Mike, I saw you at the Tusitala last night.
<i>Na'o a'u?</i>	Just me?
<i>Leai, 'outou ma Sieni ma Losa.</i>	No, it was you, Jane and Rose.
<i>'O fea na 'e iai?</i>	Where were you?
<i>Na mātou ō atu ma Lui ma lana uō.<sup>13</sup></i>	We came with Louis and his friend.
<i>'Ae na'o Lui na 'ou va'ai i ai.<sup>14</sup></i>	But I only saw Louis.
<i>Sā mā sisiva ma le uō a Lui.</i>	I danced with Louis's friend.
<i>E lē tioa!</i>	No wonder!
<i>'O ai le igoa o le uō a Lui?</i>	What's Louis's friend's name?
<i>'O Patricia.</i>	Patricia.
<i>Na 'e 'ōnā?<sup>15</sup></i>	Were you drunk?
<i>'Ou te le'i 'ōnā.</i>	I wasn't drunk.

7.9 CONVERSATION: *'E te valea?* 'Are you stupid?'

<i>Tama: Suga, sau i 'ī!</i> <sup>16</sup>	Girl, come here!
<i>Teine: 'O le ā le mea 'e te mana'o ai?</i>	What do you want?
<i>Tama: Sau tā talanoa.</i>	Come let's talk.
<i>Teine: Talanoa i le ā?</i>	Talk about what?
<i>Tama: Tā talanoa i le tā faigāuō.<sup>17</sup></i>	Let's talk about our friendship.
<i>Teine: Tā te lē uō.</i>	We're not friends.
<i>Tama: 'Aua 'e te pepelo.</i>	Don't you lie.
<i>Teine: Sole, e lē mālie.<sup>18</sup></i>	Boy, it's not funny.
<i>Tama: Sau loa.</i>	Come (over) now.
<i>Teine: 'E te valea?</i>	Are you stupid?

<sup>12</sup> *tafaoga* n., outing; *Tusitala* name of a first class hotel in Apia (lit. 'storywriter' referring to Robert Louis Stevenson).

<sup>13</sup> *uō* n., friend

<sup>14</sup> *'ae* conj., but

<sup>15</sup> *'ōnā* v.i., (be) drunk

<sup>16</sup> *suga* 'girl!' (only used to call a girl or to attract her attention); *'ī* n., here

<sup>17</sup> *faigāuō* n., friendship (< *faigā*- making, *uō* n., friend)

<sup>18</sup> *mālie* v.i., (be) funny

7.10 A RHYME: *Māsina, māsina e* ‘Moon, moon’*Māsina, māsina e, 'o fea 'e te alu i ai?*<sup>19</sup>*'Ou te alu i luga o le mauga,*<sup>20</sup>*'Ou te lafi lilo ai.*<sup>21</sup>*Pusi sōsō mai, 'o le maile taufe'ai.*<sup>22</sup>*Le moa e koko'e,*<sup>23</sup>*'a'o le pe'a e 'ai 'ulu pē.*<sup>24</sup>

Moon, moon, where are you going?

I am going to the top of the mountain.

I will hide there.

Cat move closer, the dog bites.

The rooster crows,

but the flying fox eats overripe  
breadfruit.

## 7.11 EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Substitute.

*'E te fia alu i Apia?**'Ou te lē fia alu i Apia.*1. *alu i le ma'umaga*2. *alu i le fale*3. *alu i le lotu*4. *alu i le ā'oga*5. *alu i le fono*6. *alu i le siva*7. *alu i le pātī*8. *alu i le va'a*9. *alu i le va'alele*<sup>25</sup>10. *alu i le va'amaulu*<sup>26</sup>Do you want to go to Apia?No, I don't want to go to Apia.

go to the taro plantation

go home

go to church

go to school

go to the meeting

go to the dance

go to the party

go to the boat

go to the plane

go to the submarine

EXERCISE 2: Substitute.

*'Ou te mana'o i se fasi falaoa.*1. *i se fasi keke*2. *i se fasi pua'a*3. *i se ipu tī*4. *i se ipu kofe*I want a piece of bread.

a piece of cake

a piece of pork

a cup of tea

a cup of coffee

<sup>19</sup> *māsina* n., moon<sup>20</sup> *luga* n., top; *mauga* n., mountain<sup>21</sup> *lafi* v.i., (pl. *lalafi*) hide; *lilo* adv., out of sight; *ai* refers to *i luga o le mauga*<sup>22</sup> *pusi* n., cat; *sōsō* v.i., move close; *maile* n., dog; *taufe'ai* v.i., wild, biting<sup>23</sup> *moa* n., fowl; *koko'e* v.i., crow<sup>24</sup> *'a'o* conj., but + part. *'o*; *pe'a* n., bat; *'ulu* n., breadfruit; *pē* v.i., (be) overripe, dead<sup>25</sup> *lele* v.i., fly<sup>26</sup> *maulu* v.i., swim under water, dash in



- |                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 5. <i>i se fagu inu</i>      | a bottle of soft drink       |
| 6. <i>i se fagu pia</i>      | a bottle of beer             |
| 7. <i>i se fuāmoa</i>        | an egg                       |
| 8. <i>i se 'apu</i>          | an apple                     |
| 9. <i>i se susu</i>          | some milk                    |
| 10. <i>i se vai suamalie</i> | some soft drink, sweet drink |

## EXERCISE 3: Substitute.

*'O fea e nofo ai lou tamā?*Where does your father live?*'O fea e alu i ai lou tamā?*Where does your father go?*'O āfea e alu ai lou tamā?*When does your father go?*'O āfea e toe sau ai lou tamā?*When does your father come back again?1. *tinā*

mother

2. *uso*

brother (of a man)/sister (of a woman)

3. *to'alua*

spouse

4. *atali'i*

son (of a man)

5. *afafine*

daughter (of a man)

## EXERCISE 4: Substitute and shift the underlined phrase to the beginning of the sentence.

*Na galue le tamāloa i le ma'umaga.*The man worked in the taro plantation.*'Ole ma'umaga na galue ai le tamāloa.*It was in the taro plantation where the man worked.1. *i le togāfa'i*

in the banana plantation

2. *i le falema'i*

in the hospital

3. *ilefaletalimālō*

in the hotel

4. *i le fale'aiga*

in the restaurant

5. *ilefaleta'avale*

in the garage

6. *i le 'ōfisa*

in the office

7. *i le iunivesitē*

in the university

8. *i le faletupe*

in the bank

9. *i le faletusi*

in the library

10. *i le Fale Fono*

in the Parliament House

## EXERCISE 5: Substitute.

*'O fea na alu i ai lou tamā?*Where did your father go?1. *lou tinā*

your mother

2. *lou uso*

your brother/sister

- |                         |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 3. <i>lou tuafafine</i> | your sister                 |
| 4. <i>lou tuagane</i>   | your brother                |
| 5. <i>lau uō</i>        | your friend                 |
| 6. <i>lau tama</i>      | your child                  |
| 7. <i>lou to'alua</i>   | your spouse                 |
| 8. <i>louatali'i</i>    | your son                    |
| 9. <i>lou afafine</i>   | your daughter               |
| 10. <i>lou tei</i>      | your younger brother/sister |

EXERCISE 6: Substitute the village names (and try to find their places on a map).

'O fea e fa'ae'e ai le pasi mo Lefaga?

Where does the bus leave for Lefaga?

1. *Moamoa*
2. *Lefaga*
3. *Sāfata*
4. *Faleālili*
5. *Āleipata*
6. *Salelāvalu*
7. *Sāfune*
8. *Fagafau*
9. *Vaisala*
10. *Neiafu*

EXERCISE 7: Substitute.

'O āfea e 'āmata ai le ā'oga?

When does school start?

- |                                |                     |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. <i>le fono</i>              | the meeting         |
| 2. <i>le galuega</i>           | the work            |
| 3. <i>le pālota</i>            | the election        |
| 4. <i>le fa'amasinoga</i>      | the court hearing   |
| 5. <i>le lotu</i>              | the church service  |
| 6. <i>le tauvaga pese</i>      | singing competition |
| 7. <i>le seminā</i>            | the seminar         |
| 8. <i>le koniferenisi</i>      | the conference      |
| 9. <i>le ā'oga Aso Sā</i>      | the Sunday School   |
| 10. <i>le ta'aloga a ā'oga</i> | the school games    |

EXERCISE 8: Change the independent pronoun into a preverbal pronoun.

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 'O a'u e nofo. → 'Ou te nofo.          | I'll stay.                         |
| 1. 'O a'u e alu i le lotu.             | I'll go to church.                 |
| 2. 'O 'oe e alu i le ā'oga.            | You go to school.                  |
| 3. 'O tā'ua e ō i Apia.                | We'll go to Apia.                  |
| 4. 'O mā'ua e nonofo.                  | We'll stay.                        |
| 5. 'O 'oulua e sisiva.                 | You (two) will dance.              |
| 6. 'O lā'ua e momoe.                   | They (two) will sleep.             |
| 7. 'O tātou e ō i le fono.             | We (pl.) will go to the meeting.   |
| 8. 'O mātou e 'a'ai i le fale'aiga.    | We (pl.) will eat in a restaurant. |
| 9. 'O 'outou e sāvavali taeao.         | You (pl.) will walk tomorrow.      |
| 10. 'O lātou e mānana'o i le ta'avale. | They (pl.) want the car.           |

EXERCISE 9: Translate. Use the vocabulary for new words.

- 'E te alu i le lotu?
- Leai 'ua 'ou ma'i.
- 'O le ā le ma'i?
- 'Ua tīgā le ulu.
- 'E te fia 'ai?
- Leai, fa'afetai. E leai se mea 'ou te fia 'ai ai.
- Fa'amolemole, e iai ni au fuālā'au?

EXERCISE 10: Substitute.

'O ai na sau ma le pata?

Sā sau 'Ēlena ma le pata.

- le fasi povi
- le 'apa 'ēleni
- le falaoa 'ena'ena
- le kāpisi lāpotopoto
- le falaoamata <sup>27</sup>
- le ipu falai alaisa
- le 'ulo sapasui
- le pusa pia
- le fagu uaina
- le fagu uisikī

Who came with the butter? (lit. Who brought the butter?)

Elena brought the butter.

- the piece of beef
- the tin of herrings
- the brown bread
- the round cabbage
- the flour
- the plate of fried rice
- the pot of chop suey
- the carton of beer
- the bottle of wine
- the bottle of whiskey

<sup>27</sup> falaoamata n., flour (< falaoa n., bread + mata v.i., (be) raw)

The phrase '*O ai na sau ma...*' 'Who came with...?' is very common. You hear it, for instance, when someone comes home and notices that someone has brought some food or something else for the family. Similarly, the statement *Na sau X ma Y*. 'X brought Y' is often used to tell others who brought Y. You probably won't hear this kind of sentence very often in English speaking cultures.

## LESSON 8

### 8.1 'MY CAR' – SINGULAR POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

The Samoan translations of 'my', 'your', 'his', 'her', the so-called possessive pronouns are one of the hardest things you must learn. After you have mastered them, everything will be easier. Remember that Samoan has two words translating 'of', namely *a* and *o*, as for instance, in '*o le ta'avale a Simi*' 'Jimmy's car' and '*o le fale o Simi*' 'Jimmy's house' (cf. §3.1). This distinction between *a* and *o* is also found with possessive pronouns.

<i>'o la'u ta'avale</i>	my car
<i>'o la'u naifi</i>	my knife
<i>'o lo'u tinā</i>	my mother
<i>'o lo'u tamā</i>	my father

The forms for 'my, your, his, her and its' are a combination of the articles, the possessive preposition *o* or *a*, and an ending for the person -*'u* 'my', -*u* 'your' and -*na* 'his, her, its': *l-a-'u*, *l-o-'u* 'my', *l-a-u*, *l-o-u* 'your', *l-a-na*, *l-o-na* 'his, her, its'.

#### SINGULAR POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS WITH SINGULAR NOUN PHRASES

	Specific		Non-specific		
	A-form	O-form	A-form	O-form	
1 sg.	<i>la'u</i>	<i>lo'u</i>	<i>sa'u</i>	<i>so'u</i>	my
2 sg.	<i>lau</i>	<i>lou</i>	<i>sau</i>	<i>sou</i>	your
3 sg.	<i>lana</i>	<i>lona</i>	<i>sana</i>	<i>sona</i>	his, her, its

Examples for the specific noun phrases:

<i>'ola'u ta'avale</i>	my car
<i>'olau ta'avale</i>	your car
<i>'o lana ta'avale</i>	his/her car
<i>'o lo'u 'ofu</i>	my dress
<i>'o lou 'ofu</i>	your dress
<i>'o lona 'ofu</i>	his/her dress

Examples for non-specific noun phrases:

<i>'o sa'u naifi</i>	a knife for me, any of my knives
<i>'o sau naifi</i>	a knife for you, any of your knives
<i>'o sana naifi</i>	a knife for him/her, any of his/her knives
<i>'o so'u 'ofu</i>	a dress for me, any of my dresses
<i>'o sou 'ofu</i>	a dress for you, any of your dresses
<i>'o sona 'ofu</i>	a dress for him/her, any of his/her dresses

SINGULAR POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS WITH PLURAL NOUN PHRASES

	Specific		Non-specific		
	A-form	O-form	A-form	O-form	
1 sg.	<i>a'u</i>	<i>o'u</i>	<i>ni a'u</i>	<i>ni o'u</i>	my
2 sg.	<i>au</i>	<i>ou</i>	<i>ni au</i>	<i>ni ou</i>	your
3 sg.	<i>ana</i>	<i>ona</i>	<i>ni ana</i>	<i>ni ona</i>	his, her, its

Examples with specific noun phrases:

<i>'o a'u ta'avale</i>	my cars
<i>'o au ta'avale</i>	your cars
<i>'o ana ta'avale</i>	his/her cars
<i>'o o'u 'ofu</i>	my dresses
<i>'o ou 'ofu</i>	your dresses
<i>'o ona 'ofu</i>	his/her dresses

Examples with non-specific noun phrases:

<i>'o ni a'u naifi</i>	any of my knives
<i>'o ni au naifi</i>	any of your knives
<i>'o ni ana naifi</i>	any of his/her knives
<i>'o ni o'u 'ofu</i>	any of my dresses
<i>'o ni ou 'ofu</i>	any of your dresses
<i>'o ni ona 'ofu</i>	any of his/her dresses

There is no word for 'to have' in Samoan. The Samoans use the expression *iai* 'there is' and *leai* 'there is not' instead. Note that in questions and in negative sentences the noun phrase has the non-specific article.

*E iai la'u ta'avale.*

I have a car (lit. there is my car).

*E iai sauta'avale?*

Do you have a car?

*E leai sa'u ta'avale.*

I do not have a car (lit. there is not my car).

Local nouns, which do not have an article, are also combined with possessive pronouns.

*i o'u luma*

in front of me

*i ou luma*

in front of you

*i ona luma*

in front of him/her

*i o'u tua*

behind me

*i ou tua*

behind you

*i ona tua*

behind him/her

## 8.2 CONVERSATION: 'O ā mai 'oe? 'How are you?'

*'O ā mai 'oe Kaili?*

How are you Kylie?

*Sā 'ou ma'i.*

I was sick.

*'O le ā lou ma'i?*

What was your sickness?

*Sā tīgā lo'u ulu.<sup>1</sup>*

I had a headache (lit. my head hurt).

*'O ā mai nei lā?*

How is it now?

*'Ua lelei.*

It's good.

## 8.3 CONVERSATION: 'Aumai so'u 'ofu! 'Fetch me a dress!'

*Tina. 'Aumai so'u 'ofu!*

Tina. Fetch me a dress!

*'O lēfea le 'ofu?<sup>2</sup>*

Which dress?

*'Aumai le 'ofu lanu mūmū.*

Bring the red dress.

*'E te alu i fea?*

Where are you going?

*'Ou te alu i le fono a mātua.*

I'm going to the parents' meeting.

*'O fea e fai ai?<sup>3</sup>*

Where is it to be held?

*E fai i le fale o le faife'au.*

It's held at the pastor's house.

*Alu e fai le mea'ai a lou tamā.*

Go and prepare your Dad's meal.

*'Ou te tuai mai.*

I'll be late.

*Sau ma fa'atau mai se suka.*

Buy some sugar when you come.

*'Ua lelei.*

Okay.

<sup>1</sup> *tīgā* v.i., hurt, ache

<sup>2</sup> *lēfea* interr., which

<sup>3</sup> *fai le fono* v., hold a meeting

## 8.4 CONVERSATION: 'O le fale fai pa'u 'At the garage'

<i>Fa'amolemole siaki pa'u o la'u ta'avale.</i> <sup>4</sup>	Please check the tyres of my car.
<i>'O lea e lelei.</i>	It's alright.
<i>Fa'amolemole fai la'u pa'u pā lea.</i>	Please fix my flat tyre (lit. this my exploded tyre).
<i>Fa'atali. E lē 'umi.</i>	Wait. It won't take long.

8.5 A RHYME: *Piki, piki, piki* 'Piggy, piggy, piggy'

*Piki, piki, piki,*<sup>5</sup>  
*Mānaia ou vae lāiti!*  
*'Ua, 'ua so'o, 'ua, 'ua so'o.*<sup>6</sup>  
*Loupua'a fia 'ai popo.*<sup>7</sup>

8.6 USEFUL PHRASES: *Fafano ou lima!* 'Wash your hands!'

<i>Fafano ou lima!</i>	Wash your hands (from a bowl of water)!
<i>Fufulu ou lima!</i>	Wash your hands (at the tap, river, etc.)!
<i>Fufulu ou mata!</i>	Wash your face!
<i>Fufulu ou vae!</i>	Wash your feet!
<i>Tofu lou ulu!</i>	Wash your hair!
<i>Selu lou ulu!</i>	Comb your hair!
<i>Fili lou ulu!</i>	Plait your hair!
<i>'Oti lou ulu!</i>	Cut your hair!
<i>'Oti ou atigilima!</i>	Cut your fingernails!
<i>'Oti ou atigivae!</i>	Cut your toenails!
<i>Solo lou ulu!</i>	Dry your hair!
<i>Solo ou mata!</i> <sup>8</sup>	Dry your face!
<i>Fogi lou isu!</i>	Blow your nose!
<i>Sele lau 'ava!</i>	Shave your beard!

---

<sup>4</sup> *siaki* v.t., check

<sup>5</sup> *piki* n., piggy

<sup>6</sup> *'ua* v.i., grunt

<sup>7</sup> *pua'a* n., pig; *popo* n., coconut. 'Piggy, your legs are nice. You often grunt. You pig want to eat coconut.' (lit. 'your pig')

<sup>8</sup> *mata* n., eye, pl. eyes, face



## 8.7. EXERCISES

## EXERCISE 1: Substitute.

*Fofō lo'u ulu!*<sup>9</sup>

1. *lo'u ua*
2. *lo'u tua*<sup>10</sup>
3. *lo'u manava*
4. *lo'u vae*
5. *lo'u tapuvae*
6. *lo'u t apulima*
7. *o'u tau'au*
8. *o'u vae*
9. *o'u lima*
10. *lo'u tama'ilima*

Massage my head!

- my neck
- my back
- my stomach
- my foot/leg
- my ankle
- my wrist
- my shoulders
- my feet/legs
- my arms/hands
- my finger

## EXERCISE 2: Substitute.

*'Ua tīgā lona nifo.*

1. *ulu*
2. *vae*
3. *isu*
4. *gutu*
5. *'auvae*
6. *fatafata*
7. *limamatua*
8. *atigivae*
9. *atigilima*
10. *vaematua*

His/her tooth hurts.

- head
- leg
- nose
- mouth
- chin
- chest
- thumb
- toenail
- fingernail
- big toe

## EXERCISE 3: Substitute.

*E tīgā ou nifo?*

1. *lima*
2. *tau'au*
3. *mata*
4. *taliga*
5. *tuli*

Do your teeth hurt?

- hands/arms
- shoulders
- eyes
- ears
- knees

<sup>9</sup> *fofō* v.t., massage (a very important treatment in Samoan medicine)

<sup>10</sup> *tua* n., short form for *papātua*

- |               |           |
|---------------|-----------|
| 6. tapuvae    | ankles    |
| 7. tapulima   | wrists    |
| 8. vae        | feet/legs |
| 9. tama'ilima | fingers   |
| 10. tama'ivae | toes      |

EXERCISE 4: Form questions and positive and negative answers.

*E iai sau telefoni?*

Do you have a telephone?

*'Ioe, e iai la'u telefoni.*

Yes, I have a telephone.

*Leai, e leai sa'u telefoni.*

No, I don't have a telephone.

1. *E iai sau fānau?*

Do you have children?

2. *ta'avale*

a car

3. *tupe*

money

4. *sikaleti*

a cigarette

5. *tīvī*

a television

6. *leitiō*

a radio

7. *tipiloma*

a diploma

8. *tikerī*

a degree

9. *ogāumu*

an oven

10. *masini tāmea*

a washing machine

EXERCISE 5: Form questions and positive and negative answers.

*E iai sou tuafafine?*

Do you have a sister (said to a man)?

*E iai lo'u tuafafine.*

I have a sister.

*E leai so'u tuafafine.*

I don't have a sister.

1. *E iai sou uso?*

Do you have a brother (said to a man)?

2. *atali'i*

son (said to a man)

3. *afafine*

daughter (said to a man)

4. *to'alua*

spouse

5. *tamā*

father

6. *tinā*

mother

7. *'āiga*

family

8. *fale*

house

9. *fanua*

property of land

10. *ma'umaga*

taro plantation

EXERCISE 6: Form questions and positive and negative answers.

*E iai sana laupepa?*

Does he/she have a sheet of paper?

*E iai lana laupepa.*

He/she has a sheet of paper.

*E leai sana laupepa.*

He/she doesn't have a sheet of paper.

1. *E iai sana 'api?*

Does he/she have an exercise book?

2. *tusi*

a letter

3. *tusi faitau*

a reading book

4. *'api faitusi*

a writing pad

5. *teutusi*

an envelope

6. *vase*

a ruler

7. *peni*

a pen

8. *peni utu*

a fountain pen

9. *penitala*

a pencil

10. *titina*

a rubber eraser

EXERCISE 7: Study the conversation in §8.3 and answer the following questions.

1. *'O fea na fia alu i ai le tinā?*

2. *'O le ā le lanu o le 'ofu na mana'o ai le tinā?*

3. *'O le fale o ai e fai ai le fono?*

4. *'O le ā le mea na mana'o ai Tina?*

5. *'O le fono a ai e alu i ai le tinā?*

EXERCISE 8: Substitute. Note the respectful expression (u.f.) in sentence 3.

*'O le ā sou tāofi?*

What is your opinion?

1. *sou mau*

What do you believe?

2. *sou manatu*

What do you think?

3. *sou finagalo (u.f.)*

What do you want? (respectful)

4. *sou lagona*

What do you feel?

5. *sou iloa*

What do you know?

*'O le ā sau fautuaga?*

What is your advice?

6. *sau lapata'iga*

What is your warning?

7. *sau faitioga i 'auala*

What is your complaint about the roads?

8. *sau fesoasoani i le fesili*

What is your help(ful advice) to the question?

9. *sau fa'amatalaga i le mea na tupu*<sup>11</sup> What do you say about what happened? (lit. What is your explanation of the thing (that) happened?)
10. *sau va'aiga i le taulaga* What is your observation of the town area?

EXERCISE 9: Translate the following paragraph. If there are any words you do not know, use the vocabulary.

*Tālofa. 'O lo'u igoa 'o Simi. 'O a'u 'o se 'Ausetālia. 'Ou te faigaluega i le Haikomisi o 'Ausetālia. 'Ou te nofo i Moamoa. E leai so'u to'alua. 'O lo'u 'āiga e nonofo 'uma i 'Ausetālia. E iai le uso o lo'u tinā i Niu Sila. E iai o'u uso e to'atolu ma lo'u tuafafine e to'atasi.*

---

<sup>11</sup> *fa'amatalaga* n., explanation < *fa'amatala* v.t., explain

## LESSON 9

### 9.1 'OUR CAR' – DUAL POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

The dual pronouns refer to two people. The pronouns are combined with the articles and distinguish between *o* and *a* forms.

<i>'o lo lā fale</i>	their house (lit. the house of two people)
<i>'o la lā ta'avale</i>	their car (lit. the car of two people)

But there is also a neutral form *le*. If you use the neutral form, you will never make mistakes mixing A- and O-forms!

<i>'o le lā fale</i>	their house (lit. the house of two people)
<i>'o le lā ta'avale</i>	their car (lit. the car of two people)

#### DUAL POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS WITH SINGULAR SPECIFIC NOUN PHRASES

	A-form	O-form	Neutral form	
1du.inc.	<i>la tā</i>	<i>lo tā</i>	<i>le tā</i>	our
1du.exc.	<i>la mā</i>	<i>lo mā</i>	<i>le mā</i>	our
2du.	<i>la lua</i>	<i>lo lua</i>	<i>le lua</i>	your
3du.	<i>la lā</i>	<i>lo lā</i>	<i>le lā</i>	their

A- or O-form	Neutral form	
<i>'Ua ma'i lo tā tinā.</i>	<i>'Ua ma'i le tā tinā.</i>	Our (inc.) mother is sick.
<i>Sā tuai la mā pasi.</i>	<i>Sā tuai le mā pasi.</i>	Our (exc.) bus was late.
<i>'Ua 'uma la lua su'ega.</i>	<i>'Ua 'uma le lua su'ega.</i>	Your (du.) exam is finished.
<i>E iai la lā telefoni.</i>	<i>E iai le lā telefoni.</i>	They (du.) have a telephone.

## DUAL POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS WITH SINGULAR NON-SPECIFIC NOUN PHRASES

	A-form	O-form	Neutral form	
1 du.inc.	<i>sa tā</i>	<i>so tā</i>	<i>se tā</i>	our
1 du.exc.	<i>sa mā</i>	<i>so mā</i>	<i>se mā</i>	our
2 du.	<i>sa lua</i>	<i>so lua</i>	<i>se lua</i>	your
3 du.	<i>sa lā</i>	<i>so lā</i>	<i>se lā</i>	their

A- or O-form	Neutral form	
<i>E leai sa tā mea'ai.</i>	<i>E leai se tā mea'ai.</i>	We (inc.) don't have any food.
<i>E iai sa mā fasi pua'a?</i>	<i>E iai se mā fasi pua'a?</i>	Is there any piece of pork for us (exc.)?
<i>E iai sa lā ta'avale?</i>	<i>E iai se lā ta'avale?</i>	Do they have a car?
<i>'O ai so lua tinā?</i>	<i>'O ai se lua tinā?</i>	Who is your mother?
<i>E leai so lā tinā.</i>	<i>E leai se lā tinā.</i>	They don't have a mother.

## DUAL POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS WITH PLURAL SPECIFIC NOUN PHRASES

	A-form	O-form	Neutral form	
1 du.inc	<i>a tā</i>	<i>o tā</i>	<i>tā</i>	our
1 du.exc	<i>a mā</i>	<i>o mā</i>	<i>mā</i>	our
2 du.	<i>a lua</i>	<i>o lua</i>	<i>lua</i>	your
3 du.	<i>a lā</i>	<i>o lā</i>	<i>lā</i>	their

A- or O-form	Neutral form	
<i>E tele a tā pua'a.</i>	<i>E tele tā pua'a.</i>	We (inc.) have many pigs. (lit. Our pigs are many.)
<i>E tele o lā 'ofu.</i>	<i>E tele lā 'ofu.</i>	They (du.) have many dresses. (lit. Their dresses are many.)

## DUAL POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS WITH PLURAL NON-SPECIFIC NOUNS

	A-form	O-form	Neutral form	
1 du.inc.	<i>ni a tā</i>	<i>ni o tā</i>	<i>ni tā</i>	our
1 du.exc.	<i>ni a mā</i>	<i>ni o mā</i>	<i>ni mā</i>	our
2 du.	<i>ni a lua</i>	<i>ni o lua</i>	<i>ni lua</i>	your
3 du.	<i>ni a lā</i>	<i>ni o lā</i>	<i>ni lā</i>	their

A- or O-form	Neutral form	
<i>E leai ni a mā pua'a.</i>	<i>E leai ni mā pua'a.</i>	We don't have pigs.
<i>E leai ni o mā se'evae.</i>	<i>E leai ni mā se'evae.</i>	We don't have shoes.

## 9.2 'OUR CAR' – PLURAL POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

The plural forms show the same pattern as the dual forms. Again, there is a neutral form, which makes learning a bit easier.

### PLURAL POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS WITH SINGULAR SPECIFIC NOUN PHRASES

	A-form	O-form	Neutral form	
1pl.inc.	<i>la tātou</i>	<i>lo tātou</i>	<i>le tātou</i>	our
1pl.exc.	<i>la mātou</i>	<i>lo mātou</i>	<i>le mātou</i>	our
2pl.	<i>la tou</i>	<i>lo tou</i>	<i>le tou</i>	your
3pl.	<i>la lātou</i>	<i>lo lātou</i>	<i>le lātou</i>	their

### PLURAL POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS WITH SINGULAR NON-SPECIFIC NOUN PHRASES

	A-form	O-form	Neutral form	
1pl.inc.	<i>sa tātou</i>	<i>so tātou</i>	<i>se tātou</i>	our
1pl.exc.	<i>sa mātou</i>	<i>so mātou</i>	<i>se mātou</i>	our
2pl.	<i>sa tou</i>	<i>so tou</i>	<i>se tou</i>	your
3pl.	<i>sa lātou</i>	<i>so lātou</i>	<i>se lātou</i>	their

*E iai se tou ta'avale?*

Do you (pl.) have a car?

*E iai sa tou ta'avale?*

Do you (pl.) have a car?

*E mānaiatele le mātou ta'avale.*

We (pl.exc.) have a very nice car. (lit. Our car is very nice).

*E mānaia tele la mātou ta'avale.*

We (pl.exc.) have a very nice car. (lit. Our car is very nice).

*E to'atele lo lātou 'āiga.*

Their (pl.) family is big (lit. many).

*E to'atele le lātou 'āiga.<sup>1</sup>*

Their (pl.) family is big (lit. many).

<sup>1</sup> *to'atele* v.i., (be) many (people)

## PLURAL POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS WITH PLURAL SPECIFIC NOUN PHRASES

	A-form	O-form	Neutral form	
1pl.inc.	<i>a tātou</i>	<i>o tātou</i>	<i>tātou</i>	our
1pl.exc.	<i>a mātou</i>	<i>o mātou</i>	<i>mātou</i>	our
2pl.	<i>a tou</i>	<i>o tou</i>	<i>tou</i>	your
3pl.	<i>a lātou</i>	<i>o lātou</i>	<i>lātou</i>	their

## PLURAL POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS WITH PLURAL NON-SPECIFIC NOUN PHRASES

	A-form	O-form	Neutral form	
1pl.inc	<i>ni a tātou</i>	<i>ni o tātou</i>	<i>ni tātou</i>	our
1pl.exc	<i>ni a mātou</i>	<i>ni o mātou</i>	<i>ni mātou</i>	our
2pl.	<i>ni a tou</i>	<i>ni o tou</i>	<i>ni tou</i>	your
3pl.	<i>ni a lātou</i>	<i>ni o lātou</i>	<i>ni lātou</i>	their

*E iai ni tou mago?*

Do you have mangoes?

*E tele mātou mago.<sup>2</sup>*

We have many mangoes. (lit. Our mangoes are many.)

*E leai ni a lātou teine, na'o tama.*

They don't have girls, only boys.

## 9.3 TWO MORE VERBAL PARTICLES: 'ia AND se'i

If you want to express that something should happen or that someone should do something, you use 'ia in the place of a tense-aspect particle.

*'Ia manuia le malaga!*

Have a nice trip! (lit. May the journey be nice!)

*'Ia tātou onosa'i!*

Let's be patient!

The verbal particle *se'i* is used to politely ask for permission to do something, to ask other people to do something, or to express the wish that something may happen. In the first person *se'i* can combine with *o'u* resulting in *so'u* (cf. §7.1).

*Se'i o'u alu muamua.*

Let me go first.

*So'u alu muamua.*

Let me go first.

*Se'i sau se isi!*

Could someone come (and help)!

*Se'i sau se isi.*

Wait until someone comes.

*Se'i toeitiiti.<sup>3</sup>*

Wait a little bit.

<sup>2</sup> *tele* v.i., (be) many (animals, things)

<sup>3</sup> *toeitiiti* v.i., it is nearly, almost going to happen



You also use *se'i* when you want to say that something should happen first and then something else.

*Se'i alu le tamāloa tātou 'a'ai lea.*<sup>4</sup>

We'll eat after the man has left.

*Se'i o'u alu i Apia fa'atau se suka.*

When I go to Apia, I'll buy some sugar.

*So'u alu i Apia fa'atau se suka.*

When I go to Apia, I'll buy some sugar.

*Se'i 'āmata le fono o'u alu i totonu.*

I'll go inside when the meeting starts.

The phrase *se'i 'uma* 'may...be finished' translates as English 'after' (cf. §15.6.).

*Se'i 'uma le lotu tātou ō loa.*

Let's go after the service. (lit. May the service be finished, let's go then.)

#### 9.4 USEFUL PHRASES: *'Ia manuia* – WISHES AND BLESSINGS

*'Ia manuia le Kirisimasi.*

Merry Christmas.

*'Ia manuia le Tausaga Fou.*

Happy New Year.

*'Ia manuia lou aso fānau.*

Happy Birthday to you.

*'Ia manuia le pō.*

Good night.

*'Ia manuia le aso.*

Have a nice day.

*'Ia manuia le malaga.*

Have a good trip.

*'Ia manuia le fa'amuli.*

Have a good staying behind. (cf. §1.3)

*'Ia manuia le su'ega.*

Good luck for your exam.

*'Ia fua le niu.*

May the coconut tree bear fruits. (lit. May you bear children – said to the newly married couple)

#### 9.5 CONVERSATION: *Nifo tīgā* 'Toothache'

*Karene, 'o ai na lua ō mai?*

Karen, who did you come with?

*Na mā ō mai ma Iānesi.*

I came with Janice.

*'O le ā le fa'avelave?'*<sup>5</sup>

What is the matter?

*Se, 'o Iānesi e tīgā le nifo.*

Oh, it's Janice's aching tooth.

*'O ai le fōma'i nifo lua te ō i ai?'*<sup>6</sup>

Who is the dentist you are going to?

*Mā te lē iloa se fōma'i nifo.*

We (du.exc.) don't know any dentist.

*E te iloa se fōma'i nifo lelei?*

Do you (sg.) know a good dentist?

*Leai. Fesili i le lua tamā.*

No. Ask your (du.) father.

<sup>4</sup> *lea* adv., then

<sup>5</sup> *fa'avelave* n., problem, accident

<sup>6</sup> *fōma'i nifo* n., dentist

*E ita le mā tamā ia mā'ua*  
*pe 'ā mā ō mai i lona 'ōfisa faigaluega.*  
*Tālofa e i nai teine. 'Ailoga e ita.<sup>7</sup>*

Our father gets angry with us (du.exc.)  
 if we come here to his office at work.  
 Poor girls. I doubt that he'll be angry.

## 9.6 EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Form questions and positive and negative answers.

*E iai se lua telefoni?*

Do you (du.) have a telephone?

*E iai le mā telefoni.*

We have a telephone.

*E leai se mā telefoni.*

We don't have a telephone.

1. *tīvī*
2. *leitiō*
3. *pusa'aisa*
4. *ta'avale*
5. *komipiuta*
6. *meapu'eata*<sup>8</sup>
7. *viko*
8. *falaiuila*<sup>9</sup>
9. *'ogāumu uila*
10. *'ogāumu kesi*

- a television
- a radio
- a fridge
- a car
- a computer
- a camera
- a video
- an electric frying pan
- an electric oven
- a gas oven

EXERCISE 2: Form questions and positive and negative answers.

*E iai ni lā tusifolau?*

Do they (du.) have passports?

*E iai lā tusifolau.*

They have passports.

*E leai ni lā tusifolau.*

They don't have passports.

1. *visa*
2. *pepa malaga*
3. *pepa fānau*
4. *pepa fa'aipoipo*
5. *pepa papatiso*
6. *pepa fa'amaonia*
7. *laisene 'ave ta'avale*<sup>10</sup>

- visas
- visas
- birth certificates
- marriage certificates
- baptism certificates
- ID cards
- driver's licences

<sup>7</sup> 'ailoga interj., it is doubtful

<sup>8</sup> pu'eata v.i., take photos (< pu'e v.t., catch, take + ata n. picture)

<sup>9</sup> uila n., flash, lightning, electricity

<sup>10</sup> 'ave ta'avale 1. v.i., drive a car, 2. n., driver

- |   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|
| 8. <i>laisene 'ave pasi</i> <sup>11</sup> | bus driver's licences |
| 9. <i>pāsese o le va'alele</i>            | fares for the plane   |
| 10. <i>pāsese o le va'a</i>               | fares for the boat    |

EXERCISE 3: Form questions and positive and negative answers.

*E iai se tou suka?*

Do you (pl.) have sugar?

*E iai le mātou suka.*

We (pl.exc.) have sugar.

*E leai se mātou suka.*

We don't have sugar.

- |                                 |              |
|---------------------------------|--------------|
| 1. <i>se tou māsima</i>         | salt         |
| 2. <i>se tou falaoamata</i>     | flour        |
| 3. <i>se tou alaisa</i>         | rice         |
| 4. <i>se tou kale</i>           | curry        |
| 5. <i>se tou koko Sāmoa</i>     | Samoan cocoa |
| 6. <i>se tou kināmoni</i>       | cinnamon     |
| 7. <i>se tou pepa faimea'ai</i> | pepper       |
| 8. <i>se tou vīneta</i>         | vinegar      |
| 9. <i>se tou aniani</i>         | an onion     |
| 10. <i>se tou aniani Saina</i>  | garlic       |

EXERCISE 4: Form questions and positive and negative answers.

*E iai se lātou fale'oloa?*

Do they have a shop?

*E iai le lātou fale'oloa.*

They have a shop.

*E leai se lātou fale'oloa.*

They don't have a shop.

- |                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>ma'umaga</i>           | a taro plantation        |
| 2. <i>togāniu</i>            | a coconut plantation     |
| 3. <i>lafu povi</i>          | cattle (herd of cattle)  |
| 4. <i>loli</i>               | a lorry                  |
| 5. <i>ta'avale la'itiiti</i> | a taxi (lit. little car) |
| 6. <i>piki'apu</i>           | a pick-up                |
| 7. <i>pasi</i>               | a bus                    |
| 8. <i>uila</i>               | a bicycle                |
| 9. <i>uila afi</i>           | a motorbike              |
| 10. <i>sipi</i>              | a jeep                   |

<sup>11</sup> 'ave pasi 1. v.i., drive a bus, 2. n., bus driver

## EXERCISE 5: Substitute.

Se'i 'uma le lotu, tātou 'a'ai lea.

1. alu le tamāloa
2. ō tamaiti i le ā'oga
3. tū'ua le ā'oga <sup>12</sup>
4. tou tā'e'ele
5. sisiva nai teine
6. vela le mea'ai
7. ō mai le 'au vala'aulia
8. mā'o'ona tamaiti
9. mā fo'i mai
10. laulaulemea'ai

Let's eat, when church finishes. (lit. Let the church be finished, we eat then.)

- after the man leaves
- when the children have gone to school
- when school has finished
- after you (pl.) have had a shower
- after the poor girls have danced
- when the food is cooked
- when the invited guests arrive
- when the children have had enough
- when we (du.exc.) return
- when the table is set (with food)

## EXERCISE 6: Substitute.

Fa'amolemole, 'aumai se sōsisi se'i  
'ai ai le lo'omatua.

1. se esi
2. se pāsio
3. se fa'ipula
4. se moli
5. se vaisalo
6. se koko alaisa
7. se sua fa'i
8. se suaesi
9. se panikeke
10. se keke

Please bring a sausage for the old woman to eat. (lit. ..., may the old lady eat from it.)

- a pawpaw
- a passionfruit
- a ripe banana
- an orange
- coconut porridge
- rice with cocoa
- banana porridge
- pawpaw porridge
- a pancake
- a cake

## EXERCISE 7: Substitute.

'Ia tātou lototetele.

1. 'onosa'i
2. fa'amālolosi i le galuega <sup>13</sup>
3. tō'a'aga <sup>14</sup>

Let's be brave.

- be patient
- work hard
- be diligent

<sup>12</sup> tū'ua v.i., (be) finished (of school)

<sup>13</sup> fa'amālosi v.i., (pl. fa'amālolosi) press on, keep going, force o.s. (< mālosi v.i., (pl. mālolosi) be strong)

<sup>14</sup> tō'aga v.i., (pl. tō'a'aga) be zealous, diligent, strive to do s.th. well

- |  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 4. <i>fa'aeteete</i>                   | be careful                      |
| 5. <i>mataala</i>                      | be alert                        |
| 6. <i>fīafīa</i>                       | be happy                        |
| 7. <i>'oli'oli</i>                     | be joyful                       |
| 8. <i>fa'alogo lelei i le faiā'oga</i> | listen carefully to the teacher |
| 9. <i>tausisi i tūlāfono</i>           | stick to the rules              |
| 10. <i>fealofani</i>                   | respect one another             |

EXERCISE 8: Rewrite each sentence so that the preverbal pronouns are used.

- 'O mātou e mālōlosi.* → *Mātou te mālōlosi.* We (pl.) are strong.
- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>'O a'u e sau mai 'Amerika.</i>                     | I come from America.                |
| 2. <i>'O a'u sālō ma'i.</i>                              | I was sick.                         |
| 3. <i>'O 'oe e lelei.</i>                                | You are good.                       |
| 4. <i>'O 'oe na alu i le fono.</i>                       | You went to the meeting.            |
| 5. <i>'O 'oe na pepelo iā Mālia.</i>                     | You lied to Mary.                   |
| 6. <i>'O 'oulua e nonofo i le faletalimālō.</i>          | You (du.) are staying at the hotel. |
| 7. <i>'O mā'ua 'ua fia momoe.</i>                        | We (du.exc.) want to sleep.         |
| 8. <i>'O tā'ua sālō tā'e'ele i le sami.<sup>15</sup></i> | We (du.inc.) swam in the sea.       |
| 9. <i>'O 'oulua sālō pepese i le tīvī<sup>16</sup></i>   | You (du.) sang on television.       |
| 10. <i>'O 'outou na moaina le vao.</i>                   | You (pl.) mowed the grass.          |

<sup>15</sup> *tā'e'ele* v.i. (pl. *tā'e'ele*), have a shower, bathe

<sup>16</sup> *pese* v.i. (pl. *pepese*), sing

## LESSON 10

### 10.1 'ONE, TWO, THREE' – CARDINAL NUMERALS

The cardinal numerals behave like verbs. Compare:

<i>E sisiva tamaiti taeao.</i>	The children will dance tomorrow.
<i>E mānanaia fale Sāmoa.<sup>1</sup></i>	Samoan houses are beautiful.
<i>E tolu fale Sāmoa.</i>	There are three Samoan houses. (lit. The Samoan houses are three.)
<i>E tolu a'u pua'a.</i>	I have three pigs. (lit. My pigs are three.)

If the numerals are used to count human beings, they have the prefix *to'a*:-

<i>E to'atolu tamaiti.</i>	There are three children.
<i>E to'atolu tamaiti e sisiva taeao.</i>	Three children will dance tomorrow. (lit. Three are the children who will dance tomorrow.)
<i>E sisiva tamaiti e to'atolu taeao.</i>	Three children will dance tomorrow. (lit. The children, (who) are three, will dance tomorrow.)

The question word *fīa* 'how many' is used in the same way as the numerals:

<i>E fīa au pua'a?</i>	How many pigs do you have? (lit. How many are your pigs?)
<i>E to'afīa tamaiti e sisiva taeao?</i>	How many children will dance tomorrow?

---

<sup>1</sup> *mānaia* v.i. (pl. *mānanaia*), nice, beautiful

The numbers are:

0	'ō, selo		
1	tasi	10	sefulu
2	lua	20	luasefulu
3	tolu	30	tolusefulu
4	fā	40	fāsefulu
5	lima	50	limasefulu
6	ono	60	onosefulu
7	fītu	70	fitusefulu
8	valu	80	valusefulu
9	iva	90	ivasefulu
11	sefulutasi or tasitasi	1000	afe
12	sefululua or tasilua	4014	fāafeseifulufā
110	selausefulu	5002	limaafe ma le lua
106	selau ma le ono	10,000	sefuluafe
208	luaselau ma le valu	100,000	selauafe
370	toluselaufitusefulu	1,000,000	miliona

*E fia ou tausaga?*

How old are you? (lit. How many are your years?)

*E fāsefulu ono.*

46.

*E fia le tau?*

How much is it? (lit. How much is the price?)

*E fitusefulu sene.*

70c.

*E fia le pāsese?*

How much is the fare?

*E lua tālā.*

\$2.00

*E to'afia lau fānau?*

How many children do you have? (lit. How many are your offspring?)

*E to'atolu teine, 'ae to'afā tama.*

Three girls and four boys.

*E iai sau telefoni?*

Do you have a telephone?

*'O le ā le nūmera?*

What is the number?

*Lua lua fā ono tasi.*

22461.

'O le ā le mamao o le tou fale?<sup>2</sup>

How far is your house?

Pē limasefululima maila.<sup>3</sup>

About 55 miles.

limasefulusene

50c

tālā luasefulu

\$1.20

sefulu tālā ma le lima sene

\$10.05

## 10.2 'ONE, TWO, THREE EACH'

In combination with numerals, the notion of 'each' is expressed by *ta'i*, which precedes the numeral. It is usually written as a separate word, especially when the numeral is quite long.

*E ta'i luasefulu sikaleti i le pepa e tasi.*

There are twenty cigarettes in each packet.

*E ta'i valu tālā i le 'apa.*

It is \$8.00 for each tin.

*E ta'i fia?*

How many for each one?

## 10.3 USEFUL PHRASES: *E fia ou tausaga?* 'How old are you?'

There are many different expressions to ask for somebody's age or to talk about it.

*E fia tausaga o lou tamā?*

How old is your father?

*'O le ā le matua o lou tinā?*<sup>4</sup>

How old is your mother?

*'O le ā le mātutua o ou mātua?*

How old are your parents?

*'O le ā lou matua?*

How old are you? (lit. What is your age?)

*'Ua fia tausaga o lou ōlaga?*<sup>5</sup>

How old are you? (lit. How many are the years of your life?)

*'Ua fia nei tausaga o lou soifuaga?*<sup>6</sup>

How old are you? (lit. How many are now the years of your life?)

*'O le ā le matua o lou soifuaga?*

How old are you? (lit. What is the age of your life?)

*'Ua 'ātoa nei lo'u tolusefulu.*<sup>7</sup>

I am now 30. (lit. My 30 are complete now.)

*'Ua maua nei le fā lima o o'u tausaga.*

I am now 45. (lit. Have got now the 45 of my years.)

<sup>2</sup> *mamao* n., distance

<sup>3</sup> *pē* adv., about

<sup>4</sup> *matua* 1. v.i. (pl. *mātutua*), be old, 2. n. (pl. *mātutua*), age (lit. the being old); *matua* n., age

<sup>5</sup> *ōlaga* n., life

<sup>6</sup> *soifuaga* n. (u.f.), life (< *olaga*)

<sup>7</sup> *'ātoa* v.i., be complete



'Ua tolusefulu nei tausaga o lo'u ōlaga. <sup>8</sup>	I am now 30. (lit. The years of my life are now 30.)
'O lea 'ūa savali le tolusefulu o o'u tausaga.	I am getting 30 now. (lit. Now, the 30 of my years are marching.)
'Ua 'ou aulia nei le onosefulu tausaga.	I am 60 now. (lit. I have now reached the 60 years.)
'Ua mātutua ou mātua?	Are your parents old?
E lē mātutua tele.	They are not very old.
'O ai e la'itiiti i le tou 'āiga?	Who is the youngest in your family?

#### 10.4 A CHILDREN'S RHYME WITH MOTIONS: *Tasi, tasi, tasi* 'One, one, one'

<i>Tasi, tasi, tasi</i>	One, one, one
<i>Tātou patipati.</i> <sup>9</sup>	Let's clap our hands.
<i>Lua, lua, lua</i>	Two, two, two
<i>Fa'asa'o lou pātua.</i> <sup>10</sup>	Straighten your back.
<i>Tolu, tolu, tolu</i>	Three, three, three
<i>Tātou fa'ano'uno'u.</i> <sup>11</sup>	Let's bend down.
<i>Fā, fā, fā</i>	Four, four, four
<i>Va'ai i lugā.</i> <sup>12</sup>	Look up.
<i>Lima, lima, lima</i>	Five, five, five
<i>Fia 'ai i se fasi i'a.</i> <sup>13</sup>	I want to eat a piece of fish.
<i>Ono, ono, ono</i>	Six, six, six
<i>Tātou oso, oso.</i> <sup>14</sup>	Let's jump.
<i>Fitu, fitu, fitu</i>	Seven, seven, seven
<i>Va'ai le aitu.</i> <sup>15</sup>	Watch out for the ghost.
<i>Valu, valu, valu</i>	Eight, eight, eight
<i>Tete'e lou fa'amalu.</i> <sup>16</sup>	Open your umbrella.
<i>Iva, iva, iva</i>	Nine, nine, nine
<i>Toe fo'i i le 'āiga.</i> <sup>17</sup>	Return to the family.
<i>Sefulu, sefulu, sefulu</i>	Ten, ten, ten
<i>'Ua moe ta'agulu.</i> <sup>18</sup>	We fall asleep and snore.

<sup>8</sup> Note that the speaker never uses u.f. forms when talking about himself.

<sup>9</sup> *patipati* v.i., clap

<sup>10</sup> *fa'asa'o* v.t., straighten your back; *pātua* n. (short form of *papātua*) back

<sup>11</sup> *fa'ano'uno'u* v.t., bend s.th., v.i., bend o.s.

<sup>12</sup> *va'ai i lugā* v.i., look up

<sup>13</sup> *i'a* n., fish

<sup>14</sup> *oso* v.i., jump

<sup>15</sup> *aitu* n., spirit, ghost

<sup>16</sup> *tete'e lou fa'amalu* open your umbrella

<sup>17</sup> *fo'i* v.i., return

<sup>18</sup> *ta'agulu* v.i., snore

10.5 CONVERSATION: *E to'afia lau fānau?* 'How many children do you have?'*Makerita e iai sau fānau?*

Margaret do you have children?

*'Ioe.*

Yes.

*Eto'afia?*

How many?

*Eto'avalu.*

Eight.

*'O fea 'o iai nei?*<sup>19</sup>

Where are they now?

*'Ua fai 'āiga 'uma.*<sup>20</sup>

They are all married.

*Eto'afia tama?*

How many boys?

*E leai se tama na'o teine.*

There are no boys, only girls.

*E to'afia lā le aofa'i o fānau a lau fānau?*<sup>21</sup>

So how many grandchildren do you have altogether ? (lit. How many is the total of...)

*E to'afā teine ma tama e to'asefulu.*

There are four girls and ten boys.

*'Ua fīa nei ou tausaga?*

How old are you now?

*'Ua fāsefuluiva.*

I'm 49 years old.

10.6 CONVERSATION: *Fa'atauga* 'Shopping'*'O i ai sau falaoa?*

Do you have any bread?

*'Ioe.*

Yes.

*E fīa le tau?*

How much is it?

*E tālā sefulu sene.*

\$1.10.

*E lava lau sui?*

Do you have enough change?

*E leai, e iai sau tupe la'ititi?*

No, do you have small money?

*'Oi , 'ā lea.*

Oh, here it is!

*E fīa fo'i le tau?*<sup>22</sup>

How much again?

*Tālā ma le sefulu sene.*

\$1.10.

*'Ia lea.*

Here.

*Fa'afetai.*

Thank you.

*Fa'afetaifo'i.*

Thank you too.

*Manuia le aso.*

Have a nice day.

<sup>19</sup> 'o short form of the progressive particle<sup>20</sup> *fai 'āiga* marry (make a family), also the polite word for having sexual intercourse; *'uma* v.i., (be) all<sup>21</sup> *lā* particle used in questions to make them less direct and more friendly; *aofa'i* n., sum, total<sup>22</sup> *fo'i* adv., also, again

## 10.7 CONVERSATION: 'O le fale 'ie 'The drapery shop'

<i>Ta'i mānaia nāi 'ie.</i> <sup>23</sup>	Oh, what lovely materials.
<i>E fia le tau o le 'ie solosolo lanumoana?</i> <sup>24</sup>	How much is the blue floral material?
<i>E ono tālā i le 'iata.</i>	\$6.00 per yard.
<i>E fia le tau o le 'ie moega?</i>	How much is the bed sheet?
<i>'O le ā le telē 'e te mana'o i ai?</i> <sup>25</sup>	What size do you want? (lit. What is the size you want?)
<i>'Ou te lē mālmalama.</i>	I don't understand.
<i>Pē ō se 'ie 'afu mo se moega to'atasi po'o se moega to'alua?</i> <sup>26</sup>	Whether it's a sheet for a single bed or a double bed?
<i>'Oi, 'ua 'aumālmalama.</i>	Oh, I understand.
<i>'Ou te fia mana'o i se 'ie mo le moega to'atasi.</i>	I want a sheet for a single bed.
<i>E ta'i sefululua tālā i le 'ie.</i>	It's \$12.00 each.
<i>E te lē mana'o i ni 'ie pupuni?</i> <sup>27</sup>	Don't you want any curtains?
<i>'O lea e pa'ū.</i> <sup>28</sup>	It's on sale.
<i>Na'o le ta'i fā tālā i le 'iata.</i> <sup>29</sup>	It's only \$4.00 per yard.
<i>Ta'i taugōfie.</i> <sup>30</sup>	That's very cheap.

## 10.8 EXERCISES

When you ask the shop keeper to give you something you say: 'Aumai se tā suka which literally means 'Bring us (du.inc.) some sugar'.

## EXERCISE 1: Substitute.

'Aumai se tā <u>pepa suka</u> , fa'amolemole.	Bring a <u>packet of sugar</u> , please.
1. <i>pepa lolo</i>	a packet of lollies
2. <i>pepa kofe</i>	a packet of coffee
3. <i>pepa sikaleti</i>	a packet of cigarettes
4. <i>pepa lautī</i>	a packet of tea
5. <i>pepa keke</i>	a packet of biscuits, cake

23 *nāi* emotional plural article (§5.1); 'ie n., material, cloth

24 'ie solosolo n., floral material; lanumoana v.i., (be) blue

25 *telē* n., size

26 *pe...po* conj., whether...or; 'ie 'afu n., bed sheet; to'atasi num., one (person); to'alua num., two (persons)

27 'ie pupuni n., curtain (< pupuni v.t., close)

28 *pa'ū* v.i., fall; be on sale

29 *na'o* adv., only

30 *taugōfie* v.i., (be) cheap; *taugatā* v.i., (be) expensive

- |                           |                  |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| 6. <i>pepamāsima</i>      | a packet of salt |
| 7. <i>fasimoli tāmea</i>  | laundry soap     |
| 8. <i>fasimoli tā'ele</i> | bath soap        |
| 9. <i>pulumu fulunifo</i> | a toothbrush     |
| 10. <i>meafulunifo</i>    | a toothpaste     |

EXERCISE 2 Substitute.

*Fa'amolemole, 'aumai se tā 'apa pīsupo.*

Please, bring a can of corned beef.

- |                    |            |
|--------------------|------------|
| 1. <i>supoketi</i> | spaghetti  |
| 2. <i>sōsisi</i>   | sausages   |
| 3. <i>inu</i>      | drink      |
| 4. <i>i'a</i>      | fish       |
| 5. <i>'ēleni</i>   | herrings   |
| 6. <i>pilitati</i> | pilchards  |
| 7. <i>pea</i>      | pears      |
| 8. <i>fala</i>     | pineapples |
| 9. <i>saga</i>     | corn       |
| 10. <i>pī</i>      | peas/beans |

EXERCISE 3: Substitute.

*E fia le tau o le esi?*

How much is the pawpaw?

- |                         |                |
|-------------------------|----------------|
| 1. <i>le 'apu</i>       | the apple      |
| 2. <i>le moli Saina</i> | the mandarin   |
| 3. <i>le meleni</i>     | the watermelon |
| 4. <i>lemaukeni</i>     | the pumpkin    |
| 5. <i>le popo</i>       | the coconut    |
| 6. <i>le 'āvoka</i>     | the avocado    |
| 7. <i>le kāpisi</i>     | the cabbage    |
| 8. <i>le 'isalā'elu</i> | the eggplant   |
| 9. <i>le kālōti</i>     | the carrot     |
| 10. <i>le kūkama</i>    | the cucumber   |

EXERCISE 4: Substitute.

*E luasefulu o 'u tausaga.*

I am 20 years old.

- |                                |    |
|--------------------------------|----|
| 1. <i>luasefulu ma le tasi</i> | 21 |
| 2. <i>fāsefulu ma le lua</i>   | 42 |

3. <i>valusefulu ma le tolu</i>	83
4. <i>onosefulu ma le fitu</i>	67
5. <i>valu</i>	8
6. <i>sefululua</i>	12
7. <i>tolusefulutolu</i>	33
8. <i>fāsefulu</i>	40
9. <i>onosefululua</i>	62
10. <i>fāsefululima</i>	45

## EXERCISE 5: Translate.

1. 16	6. 11
2. 19	7. 79
3. 34	8. 48
4. 43	9. 59
5. 52	10. 95

## EXERCISE 6: Substitute.

*'Ou te mana'o i se falaoa.*

1. *se pata*
2. *se sisi*
3. *se aniani*
4. *se pepa susu*
5. *se fagu inu lāpo'a*
6. *se fagu pia mālūlū*
7. *se 'apa Ma'ilo*
8. *se 'apa fuālā'au*
9. *se fesoasoani*
10. *se fautuaga*

I want some bread.

- some butter
- some cheese
- an onion
- a carton of milk
- a big bottle of drink
- a cold bottle of beer
- a tin of Milo
- a tin of vegetables
- some help
- some advice

## EXERCISE 7: Write in figures.

- |                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>iva</i>            | 6. <i>fāsefululima</i>                        |
| 2. <i>sefululua</i>      | 7. <i>selau ma le lima</i>                    |
| 3. <i>tolusefulutasi</i> | 8. <i>onoselaufitusefulu ma le tolu</i>       |
| 4. <i>valusefulutolu</i> | 9. <i>ivaafefituselauluasefulu</i>            |
| 5. <i>sefuluafe</i>      | 10. <i>luasefulutasiafeselautilusefuluiva</i> |

EXERCISE 8: Translate.

1. How many sisters do you (sg.) have?
2. I have six sisters.
3. Do you have a brother?
4. I have two brothers.
5. How old are your brothers?
6. One is 16 and the other one is 12.
7. How old are your parents?
8. My mother is 46 years old.
9. My father is 50 years old.

EXERCISE 9: Fill in the missing words and translate.

'O la'u galuega

'O a'u 'o le fōma'i. 'Ou te faigaluega i (1) falema'i. E iai (2) ta'avale 'ou te alu (3) i le galuega. (4) to'atele tagata mama'i e (5) i aso 'uma. 'O (6) Aso To'ona'i ma le (7) 'ou te lē (8) ai.

## LESSON 11

### 11.1 'THREE ONIONS' – MORE ABOUT COUNTING

When you count specific items, you can use two constructions. In the first one the numeral precedes the noun, in the second one it follows.<sup>1</sup>

<i>E lua a'u ta'avale.</i> two my cars	I have two cars. (lit. My cars are two.)
<i>Eiai a'u ta'avale e lua.</i>	I have two cars. (lit. There are my cars which are two.)
<i>E lua a'u tusi 'ua maua.</i>	I have got two letters. (lit. My letters (I) have got are two.)
<i>'Ua maua a'u tusi e lua.</i>	I have got two letters. (lit. I have got my letters which are two.)

With non-specific nouns, e.g. *ni aniani* 'some, any onions', the construction is different (you say something like 'any onions a three'). The noun has the article *ni* (non-specific plural) and the numeral the article *se* (non-specific singular). The numeral follows the noun.

<i>'Aumai ni aniani se tolu.</i>	Give me three onions.
<i>'Aumai ni pauna suka se tolu.</i>	Give me three pounds of sugar.

### 11.2 'THIS AND THAT' – DEMONSTRATIVES

Demonstratives are words like 'this' and 'that' in English. Samoan makes finer distinctions than English. When Sina asks Tevita: *'O fea la'u peni?* 'Where is my pen?' then Tevita can answer with one of the following:

<i>'O lau peni lea.</i>	This is your pen (when he has the pen).
<i>'O lau peni lele.</i>	This is your pen (when he has not got the pen, but when it is close to him).
<i>'O lau peni lenā.</i>	That is your pen (when Sina has it herself).
<i>'O lau peni nale.</i>	That is your pen (when it is closer to Sina than to Tevita).

---

<sup>1</sup> This means, it either is the main predicate or the predicate of a relative clause.

*'O lau peni lale.*

That is your pen (when it is away from both Sina and Tevita).

*'O lau peni lelā.*

That is your pen (when it is further away from both Sina and Tevita).

The demonstrative *lea* is very general and may also be used for things that are not close to either the speaker or the hearer. For things close to the speaker you can also hear *lenei* in more formal language. In expressions of time *lenei* contrasts with *lea*, but is not formal. It can be shortened to *nei*.

*'o le vaiaso lenei*

this week

*'o le vaiaso nei*

this week

*'o le vaiaso lea*

next week

*'o le vaiaso lea na te'a<sup>2</sup>*

last week (lit. that week which has passed)

In spoken language the demonstratives usually follow the noun.

*'Aumai le ipu lea.*

Give me that cup.

*'Aumai le ipu lele.*

Give me that cup (close to you).

*'Aumai le ipu lale.*

Give me that cup (over there).

*Sau e 'avatu le ipu lea.*

Come, take this cup away.

*Sau e 'avatu le ipu lenei.*

Come, take this cup away (formal).

The singular forms of the demonstratives contain the article *le*. Compare the singular forms with the corresponding plural forms:

## SINGULAR

<i>lea</i>	this
<i>lenei</i>	this (formal)
<i>lenā</i>	that (with you)
<i>nale</i>	that (close to you)
<i>lele</i>	this (close to me)
<i>lale</i>	that (over there)
<i>lelā</i>	that (further away over there)

## PLURAL

<i>ia</i> or <i>laia</i>	these
<i>nei</i>	these (formal)
<i>nā</i>	those (with you)
<i>nae</i>	those (close to you)
<i>īe</i> or <i>leie</i>	these (close to me)
<i>lae</i>	those (over there)
<i>lā</i>	those (further away over there)

In written language, where we usually only find *lea*, *lenei*, and *lenā*, the demonstratives can either follow or precede the noun. The noun does not take the article when the demonstrative comes first.

<i>le mea lea</i>	<i>le mea</i>	this thing
<i>le mea lenei</i>	<i>lenei mea</i>	this thing
<i>le mea lenā</i>	<i>lenā mea</i>	that thing

---

<sup>2</sup> *te'a* v.i., pass



## 11.3 'HERE AND THERE' – LOCATIVES

As with demonstratives, Samoan has more words than English to express 'here' and 'there'.

<i>Sau i 'ī.</i>	Come here.
<i>Sau i 'inei.</i>	Come here.
<i>Alu i 'ile.</i>	Go there (a few meters away).
<i>Alu i 'ole.</i>	Go over there (not too far over there).
<i>Alu i 'ō.</i>	Go over there (far away).

## 11.4 USEFUL PHRASES: GIVING DIRECTIONS TO THE DRIVER

<i>Alu sa'o.</i>	Go straight.
<i>Afe i le taumatau.</i>	Turn to the right.
<i>Afe i le tauagavale.</i>	Turn to the left.
<i>Fa'atū i 'ī.<sup>3</sup></i>	Stop here.
<i>Fa'atū i le fale'oloa lale.</i>	Stop at the shop over there.
<i>Va'ai se fale'oloa e fa'atū ai se'i fai la'u fa'atauga.<sup>4</sup></i>	Look for a shop to stop so that I can do my shopping.
<i>Momoli a'u i le fale'oloa o Mōlesi.<sup>5</sup></i>	Take me to Morris' supermarket.
<i>Alu atu la'itiiti i luma.</i>	Go a bit further.
<i>Fa'alēmū lau ta'avale.<sup>6</sup></i>	Slow down (your car).
<i>Afe i le 'auala pefu i le agavale.<sup>7</sup></i>	Turn into the dusty road on the left.
<i>Afe i le pou mōlī lona tolu i le agavale.<sup>8</sup></i>	Turn to the left at the third lamp post.
<i>Afe i le 'auala nā e iai le pā lā'au.<sup>9</sup></i>	Turn into the driveway where the hedge is.
<i>Afe i le agavale i talane o le falesā Māmona.<sup>10</sup></i>	Turn to the left at the side of the Mormon church.

## 11.5 'THE DAY BEFORE YESTERDAY' – TALKING ABOUT TIME

Here are the most important expressions for certain periods of time, and the various times of the day.

---

<sup>3</sup> *fa'atū* v.i., stop, make stand (here: the car)  
<sup>4</sup> *ai* refers to the shop where you want to stop; *se'i fai la'u fa'atauga* note that you don't say 'I' here; cf. §13.1; *fai* v.t., do; *fa'atauga* n., shopping  
<sup>5</sup> *momoli* v.t., take s.o. somewhere  
<sup>6</sup> *fa'alēmū* v.t., slow down (< *lēmū* v.i., (be) slow, gentle)  
<sup>7</sup> *pefu* v.i., (be) dusty, n., dust  
<sup>8</sup> *pou* n., post  
<sup>9</sup> *pā* n., fence; *pā lā'au* n., hedge (< *lā'au* n., plant)  
<sup>10</sup> *talane, tala ane* n., side

<i>sēkone</i>	second	<i>vaveao</i>	dawn
<i>mīnute</i>	minute	<i>taeapō</i>	early morning when it is still dark
<i>itūlā</i>	hour	<i>taeao</i>	morning
<i>aso</i>	day, date	<i>aoauli</i>	noon or early afternoon
<i>vaiaso</i>	week	<i>afīafī</i>	late afternoon or evening
<i>māsina</i>	month	<i>afīafī pō</i>	dusk
<i>tausaga</i>	year	<i>pō</i>	night
		<i>valuāpō</i>	midnight
<i>ananafī</i>	yesterday	<i>analeilā</i>	earlier in the day
<i>talaatu ananafī</i>	day before yesterday	<i>anataeao</i>	earlier in the morning
<i>i le asō</i>	today	<i>ananei</i>	earlier today
<i>taeao</i>	tomorrow	<i>anapō</i>	last night
<i>talaatu taeao</i>	day after tomorrow	<i>nānei</i>	later today, tonight

## 11.6 TELLING THE TIME OF DAY IN HOURS AND MINUTES

When you want to know what the time is now, you ask:

*'Ua tā se fia?*

strike a how.many

What's the time? (lit. A how many has struck?)

But if you want to know the schedule of the bus, the plane or a particular event you ask:

*'O le ā le taimi o le pasi?*

the what the time of the bus

What is the time of the bus?

*'O le ā le taimi e 'āmata ai le lotu?*<sup>11</sup>

the what the time start the service

When does the church service start? (lit. What is the time the service starts?)

The expressions for 'it is...o'clock', 'it's...minutes past...', 'it's...minutes to...', etc. follow a similar pattern:

*'Ua tā le lima.*

strike the five

It's five o'clock.

*'Ua te'a le lima i mīnute e sefulu.*

pass the five by minutes the ten

It's ten minutes past five. (lit. The five is passed by the ten minutes.)

<sup>11</sup> *ai* refers back to *le taimi*

'Ua sefulu mīnute e te'a ai le lima.

ten minutes the pass.by them the five

It's ten minutes past five. (lit. Ten are the minutes the five is passed by them.)

'Ua toe sefulu mīnute tā le lima.

more ten minutes strike the five

It's ten minutes to five. (lit. The minutes are ten more, (then) the five strikes.)

'Ua 'afa le lima.

half the five

It's half past five. (lit. The five is half.)

'Ua toe lima mīnute i le 'afa o le valu.

more five minutes to the half of the eight

It's five minutes to half past eight. (lit. The minutes are five more to the half of the eight.)

These examples show two new constructions:

1. Numerals can become nouns (can be nominalised), e.g. *le lima* 'the five', *le valu* 'the eight'.
2. Relative clauses are similar to constructions with fronted *i*-phrases, and therefore have *ai*.

'Ua te'a le lima i mīnute e sefulu.

It is ten minutes past five.

'Ua sefulu mīnute e te'a ai le lima.

It is ten minutes past five.

### 11.7 CONVERSATION: 'O le fono 'The meeting'

'O le ā le taimi o lau fono?

What is the time of your meeting?

'O le taeao.

In the morning.

'O āfea e fai ai?

When is it? (lit. When is it done?)

'O le Aso Lulu lea.

Next Wednesday.

'O le ā le 'umi?

How long is it? (lit. What is the length?)

Etolu itūlā.

Three hours. (lit. The hours are three.)

### 11.8 CONVERSATION: 'O le malaga i Niu Sila 'Travelling to New Zealand'

'O āfea 'e te alu ai i Niu Sila?<sup>12</sup>

When are you going to New Zealand?

'Ou te alu iā 'Aukuso.

I am going in August.

'E te toe sau āfea?<sup>13</sup>

When are you coming back?

'Ou te toe sau iā Sētema.

I am coming back in September.

E na'o le tasi le māsina.

It's only for one month. (lit. The month is only the one.)

<sup>12</sup> *ai* refers back to the fronted *āfea* 'when'

<sup>13</sup> *toe* adv., again

## 11.9 CONVERSATION: 'O le tāfaoga 'A trip'

*'O ai e alu i le tāfaoga?**'O a'u.**Na'o 'oe?**Leai, 'o mā'ua ma Simi.**Na'o 'oulua?**'Ioe. 'O le ā le taimi e ō ai?<sup>14</sup>**Pe 'ā tā le valu i le taeao.<sup>15</sup>**'O fea tatou te ō i ai?<sup>16</sup>**Tātou te ō i Lefaga.*

Who's going on the trip?

Me.

Just you?

No, it's Jimmy and I (we two with Jimmy).

Just you two?

Yes. What time are we going? (lit. What is the time (we) are going at?)

Eight o'clock in the morning. (lit. When the eight in the morning will be struck.)

Where are we going?

We are going to Lefaga.

11.10 CONVERSATION: *Talanoaga i le telefoni* 'Conversation on the telephone'*Matāgaluega a le Pālemia. Tālofa.**Tālofa. Fa'amolemole 'ou te fī a talanoa i le failautusi a le Pālemia.<sup>17</sup>**'Onosa'i mai lava.<sup>18</sup>**Failautusi a le Pālemia, saunoa.<sup>19</sup>**'O le 'Ofisa o le Haikomesina o 'Ausetālia lenei. 'Ua 'ou vili atu e fa'amanatu le fono taeao.<sup>20</sup>**Fa'amolemole po'o le ā le fono?<sup>21</sup>**'O le talanoaga a le Haikomesina ma le Pālemia e uiga i tamaiti sikolasipi.<sup>22</sup>**'O le ā fo'i le taimi?**'O le tā o le iva i le taeao.**Fa'afetai fa'amanatu mai.**Tōfā Soifua.**Soifua.*

Prime Minister's Department. Hello.

Hello. I want to speak to the Prime Minister's secretary please.

Just a minute.

Prime Minister's secretary, go ahead please.

It's the Australian High Commission here.

I'm ringing up to remind (you of) the meeting tomorrow.

Please, what is this meeting (about)?

It's a talk between the Prime Minister and the High Commissioner about the scholarship students.

What's the time again?

It's nine o'clock in the morning.

Thank you for reminding me.

Good bye.

Bye.

<sup>14</sup> Note that there is no pronoun in the Samoan text. The word *ai* refers back to *le taimi*.<sup>15</sup> *pe 'ā* conj. + future tense 'ā, when, if<sup>16</sup> *i ai* since 'o fea 'where' refers to the goal, you use *i ai* instead of *ai*.<sup>17</sup> *talanoa* v.i., speak, talk; *failautusi* n., secretary<sup>18</sup> 'onosa'i v.i., be patient<sup>19</sup> *saunoa* v.i. (u.f.), speak<sup>20</sup> *vili* v.i., ring, dial; *fa'amanatu* v.t., remind<sup>21</sup> *po'o po* plus 'o; *po* particle introducing questions<sup>22</sup> *e uiga i* it concerns, about

## 11.11 EXERCISES

## EXERCISE 1: Substitute.

*'O le ā le 'umi o le tu'uaga?*

1. tāfaoga
2. siva
3. lotu
4. falelauasiga
5. fa'aipoipoga
6. galuega
7. ta'aloga
8. fono
9. lēsona
10. tauvaga

How long is the school holiday?

- visit/holiday
- dance
- church service
- funeral
- wedding
- working bee
- game
- meeting
- lesson
- competition

EXERCISE 2: Substitute, answer the question by using the expression in brackets and then translate.

1. 'O anafea na 'e sau ai? (ananafi)
2. 'e alu ai i le fono? (anataeao)
3. lua ō mai ai mai 'Amerika? (tala atu ananafi)
4. tou momoe ai i le faletalimālō? (anapō)
5. alu ai Simi i tuā? <sup>23</sup> (vaiaso lea 'ua te'a)
6. 'O āfea 'e te alu ai i Niu Sila? (taeao)
7. e toe 'āmata ai ā'oga? (vaiaso lea)
8. le Lotu Tamaiti? <sup>24</sup> (māsina lea)
9. e fai ai le tou siva? (nānei)
10. le galuega a le faife'au? (afiafi)

EXERCISE 3: Read the story below, then answer the questions that follow.

*'O Lo'u 'Āiga*

*E to'aono tagata o le mātou 'āiga. O lo'u tinā, 'o o'u tuagane e to'alua ma lo'u uso e to'atasi. E lē faigaluega lo'u tinā. Na'o le nofo i le fale ma fai le mea'ai. 'O aso 'uma e alu ai lo'u tamā i lana galuega. 'O a'u e la'itiiti. 'Ua tolu nei tausaga talu ona 'ou ā'oga.<sup>25</sup> 'Ou te fiafia tele i ai.*

<sup>23</sup> *i tuā* somewhere over there; when you are in Apia *i tuā* refers to Aleipata

<sup>24</sup> *Lotu Tamaiti* White Sunday (children's church)

<sup>25</sup> *talua ona conj.*, since

1. 'O ai a'u?
2. E to'afia o'u tuagane?
3. 'O le ā le galuega a lo'u tinā e fai?
4. 'Ua fia tausaga talu ona 'ou ā'oga?
5. 'O le ā le mea 'ou te fiafia i ai?

EXERCISE 4: Substitute.

'Ua tā se fia?

'Ua lima mīnute e te'a ai le sefulu.

1. valu mīnute
2. kuata
3. luasefulu mīnute
4. 'Ua te'a le lima.
5. te'a le 'afa o le lua
6. te'a la'itiiti le valu
7. te'a la'itiiti le sefululua
8. te'a la'itiiti le tolu
9. 'afa le fā
10. tāle lima

What is the time?

It's five minutes past ten.

eight minutes  
a quarter  
twenty minutes

It is past five.

after half past two  
a little after eight  
a little past twelve  
a little past three  
half past four  
five o'clock

EXERCISE 5: Substitute.

'Ua toeitiiti tā le valu.

1. 'afa le sefulu
2. tā le lua
3. tā le valu
4. 'afa le ono
5. tā le sefululua

It's nearly eight o'clock.

half past ten  
two  
eight  
half past six  
twelve

Toe luasefululima mīnute i le fā.

6. sefuluiva mīnute
7. kuata
8. lima mīnute
9. fitu mīnute
10. luamīnute

Twenty five minutes to four.

nineteen (more) minutes  
a quarter  
five (more) minutes  
seven (more) minutes  
two (more) minutes

## EXERCISE 6: Substitute.

*'O le ā le taimi o le fono?**'O le 'afa o le iva i le taeao.*

1. *sefulu i le taeao*
2. *sefululua i le aoauli*
3. *fā i le aoauli*
4. *ono i le afiafi*
5. *valunānei*

*'O le ā le taimi o le lotu?**'O le ono i le vaveao.*

6. *iva i le taeao*
7. *tasi i le aoauli*
8. *ono i le afiafi*
9. *valu i le pō*
10. *valunānei*

## EXERCISE 7: Substitute.

*'Aumai ni tā pauna suka se lua.*

1. *pauna alaisa*
2. *pepa susu*
3. *pepa keke*
4. *pepa sikaleti*
5. *fagu pia*
6. *fasimoli tā'ele*

What is the time of the meeting?

It's half past nine in the morning.

- ten in the morning
- twelve noon
- four in the afternoon
- six in the evening
- eight tonight

What is the time for the church service?

It's six at dawn.

- nine in the morning
- one in the afternoon
- six in the evening
- eight in the night
- eight tonight

## EXERCISE 8: Translate.

1. What time do you (sg.) go to work?
2. I catch the bus at six o'clock.
3. What time does your (sg.) work start?
4. We (pl.) start at eight o'clock.
5. How many hours do you (sg.) work per day?
6. Eight hours.

Give me two pounds of sugar.

- pounds of rice
- cartons of milk
- packets of biscuits
- packets of cigarettes
- bottles of beer
- bars of bath soap

## LESSON 12

### 12.1 *E sã ona ulaula* 'Smoking is forbidden' – VERBS WITH *ona* CLAUSES

A number of verbs are combined with clauses which start with *ona*.

<i>'āmata</i>	begin, start
<i>'uma</i>	be finished, done
<i>muamua</i>	be first
<i>mulimuli</i>	be last

*'Ua 'āmata fo'i ona toe inu pia lo'u tamā.*  
 it started again that again drink beer my father  
 My father started to drink beer again. (lit. It started again that my father drinks beer.)

*'Ua 'uma ona 'ai le teine.*  
 it finished that eat the girl  
 The girl has already eaten. (lit. It is finished that the girl eats.)

<i>lata</i>	be close, near
<i>leva</i>	be a long time since
<i>tuai</i>	be late, too late
<i>vave</i>	be fast, (too) early

*'Ua lata ona toe 'āmata ā'oga.*  
 it close that again start the.schools  
 The schools are going to start again soon. (lit. It is close that the schools start again).

*'Ua leva ona alu le pasi.*  
 it long.time.ago that go the bus  
 The bus has gone a long time ago. (lit. It is a long time ago since the bus has gone.)

*'Ua tuai ona ala le tama.*  
 it late that wake.up the child  
 The child woke up too late. (lit. It is late that the child woke up).

*'O le 'ā tuai ona ō.*  
 it will be late that go (pl.)  
 We will be too late. (lit. It will be late that (we) go).



<i>faigōfie</i>	be easy
<i>faigatā</i>	be difficult
<i>māsani</i>	be used to
<i>sili</i>	be better, best, more, most

*E faigōfie ona su'i le 'ofu.*

The dress is easily sewn. (lit. It is easy to sew the dress.)

*'Ua faigatā ona iloa le 'auala.*

The road is difficult to see. (lit. It is difficult to see the road.)

*Sā māsani ona 'ou nofonofo i 'ī.<sup>1</sup>*

I used to sit here. (lit. It was a habit that I sat here.)

*E sili ona 'e nofo.*

You better stay. (lit. It is best that you stay).

*mafai*

be able, can, may

*taga*

be allowed, permitted

*sā*

be forbidden, banned

*ao*

must, be appropriate

*tatau*

must, should

*E lē mafai ona 'ou 'ai.*

I cannot eat. (lit. It is not possible that I eat.)

*E sā ona ulaula.*

It is forbidden to smoke.

*'Ua ao ona fai se pālota.*

There should be a ballot. (lit. It is appropriate to do a ballot.)

*Sā tatau ona tū lau ta'avale.*

Your car should have stopped.

Note that the *ona* clause does not contain a tense particle. The tense is expressed with the first verb.

## 12.2 'THE DANCING OF THE GIRL' – NOMINALISATIONS

Verbal clauses are often nominalised in Samoan. Compare:

*'Ua sau le pasi.*

The bus has come.

*'O le sau o le pasi.*

The coming of the bus.

*Sā siva le teine.*

The girl danced.

*'O le siva a le teine.*

The dancing of the girl.

In nominalisations of this kind, you just take the verb and use it like a noun.

<sup>1</sup> *nofonofo* v.i., sit for a while

*'Ou te fīafia i lo'u alu i Sāmoa.<sup>2</sup>*

I am looking forward to go to Samoa. (lit. I am happy about my going to Samoa.)

*Na 'ou te'i i le 'e'ē a lo'u tuagane.<sup>3</sup>*

I was shocked when my brother screamed. (lit. I was shocked at the screaming of...)

*Fa'afetai mo le lafoina mai o le tupe.<sup>4</sup>*

Thank you for sending the money. (lit. Thank you for the sending of the money.)

*Fa'afetai i lo tou fesoasoani mai.*

Thank you (pl.) for helping.

The time of the day can be expressed by a nominalisation. Compare:

*'Ua tā le lima.*

it strike the five

It is five o'clock. (lit. The five has struck.)

*E sau le pasi i le tā o le lima.*

come the bus at the strike of the five

The bus comes at five o'clock. (lit. The bus comes at the striking of the five.)

*'O le tā o le lima e sau ai le pasi.*

the strike of the five come then the bus

At five o'clock the bus comes. (lit. The striking of five, the bus comes then.)

The verb 'ese 'be extreme, extraordinary' is used with nominalisations for emphasis.

*E 'ese le ulavale o le tama.*

The boy is extremely naughty. (lit. The naughtiness of the boy is extreme.)

*E 'ese le paiē o le fafine.*

The woman is very lazy. (lit. The laziness of the woman is extreme.)

*E 'ese le telē o le pusa.*

The box is very big. (lit. The size of the box is extreme.)

*E 'ese le fia poto.*

He/she is very arrogant. (lit. The want to be clever is extreme.)

For further emphasis *ma* can be inserted after 'ese. Note that it is not necessary to mention who or what you refer to (e.g. the boy or the woman).

*E 'ese ma le ulavale.*

He is extremely naughty indeed.

*E 'ese ma le paiē.*

He is extremely lazy indeed.

*E 'ese ma le telē o le pusa.*

He is extremely big indeed.

*E 'ese ma le fia poto.*

He is extremely arrogant indeed.

<sup>2</sup> *fīafia* v.i., be happy, like to, looking forward

<sup>3</sup> *te'i* v.i., be surprised, shocked; *'e'ē* v.i., scream

<sup>4</sup> *lafo* v.t. (*lafoina*), send

## 12.3 'FIRST, SECOND, THIRD' – ORDINAL NUMERALS

Strictly speaking there are no ordinal numerals in Samoan as in English 'first, second, third', etc. Instead, the verb *muamua* 'go, be first', constructions formed by the possessive pronoun *lona*, and the cardinal numeral are used.

<i>muamua</i>	first
<i>lona lua</i>	second
<i>lona tolu</i>	third
<i>lona fā</i>	fourth
<i>'o le aso muamua</i>	the first day
<i>'o le aso lona lua</i>	the second day
<i>'o le aso lona tolu</i>	the third day
<i>'o le lona lua o aso</i>	the second day (the second of the days)
<i>'o le lona tolu o aso</i>	the third day (the third of the days)

12.4 *Talu* 'since'

The word *talū* 'since' can be used with phrases and with clauses. In phrases it is often combined with *mai* 'from'.

<i>'Ua 'ou ma'i talu mai ananafi.</i>	I have been sick since yesterday.
<i>talū mai le Kilisimasi</i>	since Christmas
<i>talū mai le tausaga 'ua te'a</i>	since last year

When *talū* is used with clauses, it is combined with *ona*.

<i>'Ua teine lelei Mālia talu ona 'e sau.</i>	Mary's been a good girl <u>since you came</u> .
<i>'Ua leaga le ta'avale talu ona fealua'i ai Simi.<sup>5</sup></i>	The car is bad since <u>Jimmy drove it</u> .
<i>Talu ona 'ou ola 'ou te le'i va'ai i se fa'alavelave fa'apēnei.<sup>6</sup></i>	I have not seen an accident like this in my whole life (lit. <u>since I lived</u> ).

12.5 USEFUL PHRASES: *Mālō!* 'Well done!' – COMPLIMENTS

Compliments often have the structure *mālō le...* 'Congratulations for the...' whereby the noun refers to what has been done well. Note that *mālō* is also used in greetings.

<sup>5</sup> *fealua'i* v.i., go around

<sup>6</sup> *fa'apēnei* v.i., (be) like this

*Mālō le fa'aui!*

*Mālō le tapua'i!*

*Mālō le sausaunoa! (u.f.)*

*Mālō le tautai! (u.f.)*

*Mālō le se'e!*

*Mālō le 'a'aosolo! (u.f.)*

*Mālō le gāsese! (u.f.)*

*Mālō le taumafai!*

*Mālō le ta'alo!*

*Mālō le ta'alo tausa'afia! <sup>7</sup>*

*Mālō le fa'amālosi!*

*Mālō le lotonu'u!*

*Mālō le fai mea mafai!*

*Mālō le gālue!*

*Fa'amālō i le tapua'iga a le atunu'u.*

*Fa'amālō i le 'au manumālō.*

*Fa'amālō fa'afetai.*

Well done the driving! (said to the driver)

Thank you for your support!

Congratulations for your dancing!

Well done the fishing!

Well done the weaving! (lit. the shuffling backwards or forwards while sitting cross-legged on the floor and weaving a mat)

Well done the moving of hands (while weaving a mat)!

Well done the preparation of food!

Congratulations on your success!

Congratulations for your playing!

Congratulations for your sportsmanship!

Congratulations for trying very hard!

Congratulations for your patriotism!

Congratulations for making it happen!

Well done the work!

Well done the country's prayers.

Congratulations to the winning team.

Well done and thank you.

## 12.6 USEFUL PHRASES: *Fa'atālofa fa'aaloalo* 'Respectful greeting'

There are two kinds of greeting formulas. The first one starts with *mālō* which means 'well done, welcome'.<sup>8</sup>

*Mālō le soifua maua.*

*Mālō le lagi e mamā<sup>9</sup>*

*Mālō le malaga manuia.*

Polite greeting to anybody.

Greeting to a high ranking chief (*tamāli'i*)

Welcome said to people who came travelling from another village or arriving safely from overseas.

<sup>7</sup> *tausa'afia* v.i., have good spirit as shown by a cheerful face and fair playing

<sup>8</sup> Some Samoan words like *mālō* are very difficult to translate directly into English because they are very closely tied to the Samoan culture and to fully understand them would require a detailed semantic analysis.

<sup>9</sup> *lagi* n., sky; *mamā* v.i., (be) clean, clear

In the second greeting formula you simply ask a seemingly unnecessary question whether the person you greet has come or what he or she is doing just now.<sup>10</sup>

'Ua 'e sau?	Have you come?
'Ua palepō mai lou sã? (u.f.) <sup>11</sup>	Your boat has arrived at night? (said to s.o. who comes back from fishing at night)
'Ua lāina mai lau tōfā a le tu'ua. <sup>12</sup>	Your honourable high ranking talking chief has come in the sun.
'Ua 'e mānava?	Have you finished work?
'Ua 'e fo'i mai?	Have you come back?
'Ā 'e alu i le lotu? <sup>13</sup>	Are you going to church?
'E te alu i le fale'olua?	Are you going to the shop?
'O fai sau galuega? <sup>14</sup>	Are you doing some work?
'O fai sau tāgamea?	Are you doing some washing?
'E te fa'atau?	Are you going shopping?

## 12.7 CONVERSATION: *Malaga i le tama'i ta'avale* 'Travelling by taxi'

Tālofa. 'O fea 'e te malaga i ai?	Hello, where are you going?
Se'i momoli atu lava a'u i le Tusitala.	Take me to the Tusitala.
'O lea 'ua tā o'o. <sup>15</sup>	We have arrived.
Fa'atali atu. E lē 'umi.	Wait. It won't take long.
Matua'i vave. <sup>16</sup>	That's quick.
Momoli loa a'u i To'omatagi.	Take me to To'omatagi.
'O gāfea?	Where about?
Fale o le 'au 'Ausetālia. <sup>17</sup>	At the Australian houses.
'O lea 'ua taunu'u.	We are here.
'E fia le pāsese?	What is the fare?
E lima tālā.	\$5.00.
Oka e lē sa'o. E tatau ona tolu tālā.	Oh no, that is not correct. It should be \$3.00.
Ia, 'ua lava lā le tolu tālā, pē 'ā malie i ai lou loto. Fa'afetai lava.	Okay, \$3.00 is enough, if you don't mind. Thank you.

<sup>10</sup> Compare English greetings like *Hey, you are back!* As it is evident that this person is back you do not want to say anything new by this phrase, but simply acknowledge the fact that he or she has been away and is back now.

<sup>11</sup> *palepō* v.i. (u.f.), arrive at night; *sā* n. (u.f.), boat

<sup>12</sup> *lāina mai* v.i., be exposed to the sun coming here; *tu'ua* n., high ranking talking chief

<sup>13</sup> 'ā TAM, short form of the future tense particle

<sup>14</sup> 'o TAM, short form of the progressive particle

<sup>15</sup> o'o v.i., arrive

<sup>16</sup> *matua'i* adv., very

<sup>17</sup> 'au n., team, group

12.8 CONVERSATION: *Mānaia le aso!* 'What a lovely day!'

<i>Ta'i mānaia le aso.</i>	What a lovely day.
<i>'Ioe, se'i vaai i le lanumoana o le lagi.</i>	Yes, just look at the blue sky.
<i>'O ananafi sã le'i timu fo'i.<sup>18</sup></i>	It was also not raining yesterday.
<i>Na'o le susulu mānaia o le lã.<sup>19</sup></i>	Just the sun shining beautifully.
<i>Na sau i le leitiō e lē timu le asō.</i>	It came on the radio that there is no rain today.
<i>'Ua ta fia tã'ele i se vaitafe mālū.<sup>20</sup></i>	I want to bathe at a cool river.
<i>Tātou ō ma tamaiti i Piula.</i>	Let's (pl.) go with the kids to Piula.
<i>E lē mamaomai Apia.</i>	It's not far from Apia.
<i>E fa'afefea ona tātou ō?<sup>21</sup></i>	How do we (pl.) go?
<i>Tātou ō i lau ta'avale 'auā e lāpo'a.</i>	Let's go in your car because it's big.
<i>E lē mafai ona fealua'i 'ona e leai se laisene.</i>	(The car) cannot go because it is not registered.
<i>Tātou ō i le pasi.</i>	Let's go by bus.
<i>Ia, 'ua lelei.</i>	Okay, that's fine.

## 12.9 EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Form a sentence beginning with *sili* 'it is best'.

<i>'Ou te nofo 'ae alu 'oe.</i>	I'll stay, but you go.
→ <i>E sili ona 'ou nofo 'ae alu 'oe.</i>	→ It's best that I stay and you go.
1. <i>Mātou te nonofo 'uma.</i>	We will all stay.
2. <i>'E te alu i le falema'i.</i>	You will go to the hospital.
3. <i>Tātou te ō i totonu o le fale.</i>	We will go inside the house.
4. <i>Fesili i lou tamā.</i>	Ask your father.
5. <i>Fa'anoi i le pule.</i>	Ask for permission from the boss.
6. <i>Mātou te pepese 'ae siva 'oe.</i>	We will sing and you dance.
7. <i>Sāuniuni mo le Aso Sā.</i>	Prepare for Sunday.
8. <i>Fa'atau mai se tātou oso.</i>	Buy an <i>oso</i> for us (i.e. a present of food to take to our family).
9. <i>Tātou fa'atali se'i o'o taeao.</i>	We will wait until tomorrow.
10. <i>'Āmata le ta'aloga.</i>	Start the game.

<sup>18</sup> *timu* v.i., rain<sup>19</sup> *susulu* v.i., shine; *lã* n., sun<sup>20</sup> *vaitafe* n., river, lit. flowing water; *mālū* v.i., (be) cool<sup>21</sup> *fa'afefea* v.i., how; a verb which combines with *ona* clauses

EXERCISE 2: Form a sentence with 'ese 'extremely, really'.

'E te leaga. → E 'ese lou leaga.

You are bad. → You are really bad.

1. E valeale fafine.

The woman is stupid.

2. E paiē letama.

The boy is lazy.

3. E mālosi le matagi.

The wind is strong.

4. 'E te āmio leaga.

Your behaviour is bad.

5. E pisi le 'auala i le taeao.

The road is busy in the morning.

6. 'E te inu pia so'o.

You (sg.) always drink beer.

7. Lua te pepelo i le faife'au.

You (du.) lie to the pastor.

8. Tou te lē mālamalama.

You (pl.) don't understand.

9. Mānaia ta'alogā kirikiti.

The cricket games are exciting.

10. E tautalaitiiti le teine.

The girl is cheeky.

EXERCISE 3: Substitute, then transform the sentence as shown in the example below.

E sau le pasi i le tā o le valu.

The bus comes at eight o'clock.

→ 'O le tā o le valu e sau ai le pasi.

At eight o'clock (the strike of eight) the bus will come.

1. ono

six

2. sefulutasi

eleven

3. sefulu

ten

4. tasi

one

5. tolu

three

6. fā

four

7. fitu

seven

8. sefululua

twelve

9. iva

nine

10. lua

two

EXERCISE 4: Substitute.

E mafai ona tou ō mai taeao?

Can you (pl.) come tomorrow?

1. gālulue i le vaiaso lea

work next week

2. momoe i le fale Sāmoa

sleep in the Samoan house

3. sāvavali i le falesā

walk to church

4. pepese i le tauvaga

sing at the competition

5. tā'a'alo soka

play soccer

6. nonofo na'o 'outou

stay by yourselves

- |                                   |                     |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| 7. <i>tāmomo'e i le tū'uga</i>    | run in the race     |
| 8. <i>sisiva fa'atasi</i>         | dance together      |
| 9. <i>ō atu i le isi ta'avale</i> | go in the other car |
| 10. <i>feinu i le 'ava Sāmoa</i>  | drink Samoan kava   |

## EXERCISE 5: Substitute.

*Talu ona 'ou sau e le'i maua sa'u mālōloga.* Since I came here, I didn't get any rest (lit. Since I came here, didn't get my rest).

- |                           |                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. <i>sa'u mea'ai</i>     | any food           |
| 2. <i>sa'u moe</i>        | any sleep          |
| 3. <i>sa'u uō</i>         | any friend         |
| 4. <i>sa'u galuega</i>    | any work           |
| 5. <i>sa'u ta'avale</i>   | any car            |
| 6. <i>sa'u tupe</i>       | any money          |
| 7. <i>sa'u tafao</i>      | any outings        |
| 8. <i>sa'u matamataga</i> | any sightseeing    |
| 9. <i>sa'u ti'eti'ega</i> | any rides          |
| 10. <i>sa'u tifagana</i>  | any movie watching |

EXERCISE 6: Substitute the underlined phrase. The following phrases are a friendly way of giving a hint that you want to eat, that you are tired, or that you want to stop working because your hands are aching, etc.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>'Ua sau <u>le mole o le manava</u>.</i> | I <u>am hungry</u> . (lit. The choking of the stomach has come.) |
| 1. <i>le fia moe</i>                       | I want to sleep.   |
| 2. <i>le fia 'ai</i>                       | I want to eat.   |
| 3. <i>le vaivai</i>                        | I am weak now.   |
| 4. <i>le pepē o lima</i>                   | My hands are aching (numb).                                      |
| 5. <i>le lēlavā</i>                        | I am exhausted.  |
| 6. <i>le ma'alili</i>                      | I am cold.   |
| 7. <i>le vevela</i>                        | I am hot.  |
| 8. <i>le fia mālōlō</i>                    | I want to rest.  |
| 9. <i>le fia alu i 'Amerika</i>            | I want to go to America.   |
| 10. <i>le fia siva i se fale kalapu</i>    | I want to dance at a nightclub (club house).                     |



EXERCISE 7: Complete the phrases by using *manuia*, *mālō*, *fa'amolemole* or *fa'afetai*.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 'aua le pisa.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ le malaga.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ le taumafai.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ lou aso fānau.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ le siva.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ 'aumai se māsima.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ mo le meaalofo.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ le gālue.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ le fa'a'uli.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ le aso.

## LESSON 13

### 13.1 'MY FATHER KILLED THE PIG' – TRANSITIVE VERBS

Verbal sentences can express that something happens or that somebody does something. They consist of a verb phrase and one or more noun phrases.

<i>Sā siva le teine.</i>	The girl danced.
<i>Sā sisiva tamaiti.</i>	The children danced.
<i>'Ua ma'i le pepe.</i>	The baby is sick.

Here the participants of the event are expressed by a simple noun phrase, i.e. *le teine* 'the girl', *tamaiti* 'the children' and *le pepe* 'the baby'. These noun phrases do not have a preposition, they are unmarked. If a sentence has two noun phrases, one is unmarked and the other one has a preposition, for example, the preposition *i*.

<i>Na va'ai le teine i le tama.</i> see the girl to the boy	The girl saw the boy.
<i>E alofa le teine i le tama.</i> love the girl to the boy	The girl loves the boy.
<i>Sā matamata tamaiti i le lakapī.</i> watch the children to the rugby	The children watched the rugby.

Sentences of this form often express sensations ('see', 'hear', etc.) or emotions ('love', 'hate', etc.). Actions like 'hit' or 'kill' are expressed by a different type of sentence.

<i>Sā tapē e lo'u tamā le pua'a.</i> kill my father the pig	My father killed the pig.
--	---------------------------

Note that the noun phrase for 'my father', the doer of the action, has the preposition *e*, whereas the noun phrase for 'the pig' is unmarked. If you want to say 'the pig was killed' without mentioning who did it, you leave out *e lo'u tamā* and simply say *Sā tapē le pua'a*. 'The pig was killed'. Note that the verb form has not been changed. It is still *tapē*. In order to have a name for noun phrases like *e lo'u tamā* 'my father', we simply call them the e-noun phrases.<sup>1</sup> The verbs which can be combined with e-noun phrases are called transitive verbs.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Linguists call them ergative or agentive noun phrases.

<sup>2</sup> When you compare the Samoan verbs with the English verbs, you will notice that not all English transitive verbs ('love', 'ask') are transitive in Samoan, e.g. *alofa* 'love', *fesili* 'ask'. In order to avoid confusion one can call the Samoan transitive verbs 'ergative verbs', which means that these verbs can be combined with the ergative noun phrase, i.e. the e-noun phrase.

## INTRANSITIVE VERBS

<i>alu</i>	go
<i>alofa</i>	love
<i>ita</i>	angry
<i>fai</i>	say
<i>fesili</i>	ask
<i>tautala</i>	talk
<i>ma'i</i>	sick, ill

## TRANSITIVE VERBS

<i>sasa</i>	smack, beat
<i>'aumai</i>	bring
<i>'ave</i>	take
<i>fai</i>	do, make
<i>pu'e</i>	catch
<i>teu</i>	decorate
<i>tapena</i>	tidy up

*Na pu'e e le leoleo le pāgotā.*  
catch the police the culprit

The police caught the criminal.

*Na teu e lo'u tinā le falesā.*  
decorate my mother the church

My mother decorated the church.

*Na tapena le fale e tamaiti.*  
tidy.up the house the.children

The children tidied up the house.

As the last example shows, the e-noun phrase may follow the unmarked noun phrase. A third type of sentence for expressing actions is this:

*Na 'ai le talo a le tama.*  
eat the taro of the boy

The boy ate his taro. (lit. The taro of the boy was eaten.)

*Na tapena le 'ato pa'u a le fafine.*  
pack the basket leather of the woman

The woman packed her suitcase. (lit. The suitcase of the woman was packed.)

The persons who do the actions are *le tama* 'the boy' and *le fafine* 'the woman'. But since the boy ate his taro and the woman packed her suitcase, the possessive prepositions are used. Only if the taro and the suitcase did not belong to the boy and the woman respectively, you would say:

*Na 'ai e le tama la'u talo.*

The boy ate my taro.

*Na tapena e le fafine la'u 'ato pa'u.*

The woman packed my suitcase.

Further examples for this use of possessive constructions:

*Na maua le pāsese o Pita.*

Pita has got his fare.

*Na fai lau mea ā'oga?*

Did you do your homework?

*Na inu lau vai?*<sup>3</sup>

Did you drink your water/medicine?

### 13.2 Fa'atauga 'Shopping' – VERBAL NOUNS

You have probably noticed that nouns with the ending *-ga* are related to verbs.

<sup>3</sup> lit. The fare of Pita was got. Was your homework done? Was your water drunk?

<i>fa'atau</i>	buy, sell	<i>fa'atauga</i>	shopping
<i>tafao</i>	go for a walk, spend one's leisure time	<i>tāfaoga</i>	trip, travel for pleasure
<i>ta'alo</i>	play	<i>ta'aloga</i>	game
<i>mālōlō</i>	rest	<i>mālōloga</i>	rest

These verbal nouns not only express the action, i.e. 'shopping', 'travelling', but can also in certain contexts refer to the people who do it, i.e. the shoppers, the travellers. The most frequent contexts for these constructions are *'ua alu* 'has gone', *'ua sau* 'has come'. When you want to say exactly who did the action, you use the possessive construction.

*'Ua alu le fa'atauga i Apia.*

The shoppers have gone to Apia.

*'Ua alu le tu'uaga a tamaiti i Savai'i.*<sup>4</sup>

The children have gone to Savai'i for the holidays. (lit. The holiday making of the children went to Savai'i.)

*'Ua alu le sāliliga a le tinā mo lana tama.*<sup>5</sup>

The mother has gone to look for her child. (lit. The searching of the mother for her child has gone.)

*'Ua sau lau ta'elega?*

Are you back from (your) the bath/shower?

*'Ua sau le savaliga a le toea'ina?*

Is the old man back from his walk?

### 13.3 'THE WHOLE DAY HAS GONE' – MORE PHRASES ABOUT TIME

The following phrases express duration.

*Na alu le aso 'ātoa 'o o'u moe.*<sup>6</sup>

I slept the whole day. (lit. The whole day went while I was sleeping.)

*Na alu le vaiaso 'ātoa 'o fa'atali le kāmuta.*

We waited for the carpenter for a whole week (while waiting for the carpenter).

*Na alu le māsina 'ātoa e leai se timu.*

A whole month without rain.

*Na alu lo'u taimi 'ātoa i le faiga o le mea'ai.*

My whole time was spent on cooking.

*E 'ātoa le itūlā 'o fa'atali le pasi.*

I waited a whole hour for the bus. (lit. The hour is complete, waiting for the bus.)

*E 'ātoa le tausaga 'o nofo Makerita i Niu Sila.*

Margaret lived in New Zealand for a whole year.

*E 'ātoa le fā vaiaso e le'i maua le tamaitiiti.*

The child was lost for a total of four weeks.

<sup>4</sup> *tu'uaga* n., holiday making (< *tū'ua* v.i., break up school (finish school in the afternoon or go on holidays))

<sup>5</sup> *sālili* v.t., look for, search for

<sup>6</sup> *'ātoa* v.i., (be) whole; 'o short form of the progressive particle

13.4 CONVERSATION: *Misi le pasi* 'Missing the bus'

*Tafēfē, 'ua te'a ifo lava le iva e le'i sau le fafine.*<sup>7</sup>

Gee, it's after nine (o'clock) and the woman still hasn't come.

*'O le ā le taimi e tatau ona sau ai?*

What time was (she) supposed to come?

*Na 'ou fai i ai e sau i le tā o le valu.*<sup>8</sup>

I told her to come at eight o'clock.

*'Ai 'ua misi le pasi mai tuā.*

Maybe (she) has missed the bus from the back villages.

*Sā tatau ona sau i le pasi o le ono.*

(She) should have come on the six o'clock bus.

*'O fea e nofo ai si māfine?*<sup>9</sup>

Where does the poor woman live?

*E nofo i Aleipata.*

She lives in Aleipata.

*Ta'i mamao.*<sup>10</sup>

That's very far.

*E ao lava iā 'oe ona 'e fa'atali la 'itiiti.*<sup>11</sup>

You must wait a little while.

*'Ai 'ua tai sau.*<sup>12</sup>

Maybe she'll be here soon.

13.5 CONVERSATION: *'O le falemeli* 'The post office'

*Tālofa.*

Hello.

*Tālofa lava.*

Hello.

*E fia lafo la'u tusi i 'Ausetālia.*

I want to send my letter to Australia.

*E fia le tau?*

How much is it?

*E fitusefulu sene.*

70c.

*'Ae ā Niu Sila?*

How about New Zealand?

*E onosefulu sene.*

60c.

*'Aumai lā ni a'u fa'ailoga onosefulu sene se lua ma le fa'ailoga fitusefulu se tasi.*<sup>13</sup>

Get me two 60c stamps and one 70c stamp.

*Pau lenā?*

Is that all?

*'Ī. E fia lā le aofa'i?*

Yes. How much is the total?

*E tālā ivasefulu sene.*

\$1.90.

*'Ia lea.*

Here it is.

<sup>7</sup> *ifo* adv., down; *lava* part. emphatic particle

<sup>8</sup> *i ai* to her; referring back to *le fafine*

<sup>9</sup> *māfine* n., woman, usually one who is not yet married

<sup>10</sup> *mamao* v.i., (be) far

<sup>11</sup> *ao...ona* it is necessary that, must

<sup>12</sup> *'ai* adv., may be; *tāi* adv., soon

<sup>13</sup> *fa'ailoga* n., stamp

## 13.6 EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Translate.

1. 'Ua lata ona alu Tavita.
2. 'Ua leva ona alu Tavita.
3. 'Ua tuai ona alu Tavita.
4. E tatau ona alu Tavita.
5. 'Ua vave ona alu Tavita.
6. E māsani ona sau si toea'ina.
7. E faigōfie ona fa'atau se fale.
8. E faigatā ona maua se galuega.
9. 'Ua 'āmata ona fai le galuega.
10. 'Ua 'uma ona fai le mea 'ai.

EXERCISE 2: Substitute.

'Ua maua la'u sikolasipi.

1. la'u galuega
2. la'u 'ato tu'utupe
3. la'u 'ato 'asoa
4. la'u 'ato ta'ita'i
5. la'u 'ato pa'u
6. lo'u pāsese
7. lo'u avanoa i le va'alele
8. lo'u 'auala i Apia.
9. lo'u fale fou
10. lo'u tusipasi fa'a'inisinia

I got my scholarship.

- job  
purse/wallet  
handbag  
briefcase  
suitcase  
fare  
seat (space) on the plane  
ride (road) to Apia  
new house  
engineering certificate

EXERCISE 3: Substitute. These phrases are used to tell someone off.

Ua fai so'o lou lē māfaufau.

1. faifaiaga
2. moe 'umi
3. valea
4. gutuoso
5. ta'alo i tama
6. palauvale
7. pisapisaō
8. 'ote i tamaiti

You are always thoughtless. (lit. You are always doing your thoughtlessness.)

- You are always late.  
You always sleep in (lit. sleep long).  
You are always stupid.  
You always talk back.  
You always tease the boys.  
You always swear.  
You always make a great deal of noise.  
You always scold the children.

9. 'e'ē i le vasega  
10. tiususū i le 'auala

You always yell at the class.  
You always yell (when somebody makes loud noises) on the road.

EXERCISE 4: Substitute. Note the different translations of *maua* 'get, find, catch'.

'Ua maua le pāsese a Ioane.

John got his fare.

1. *galuega*  
2. *pepelo*  
3. *kuluku*  
4. 'ova  
5. uō  
6. ta'avale  
7. 'ave ta'avale  
8. failautusi  
9. lāuga  
10. tauloto

John found a job.  
John was caught lying.  
John was caught lying (slang).  
John was caught lying (slang).  
John has found a friend.  
John has found a car.  
John has found a driver.  
John has found a secretary.  
John has memorised his speech.  
John has memorised his verse (for White Sunday which is a special Sunday for Samoan children).

EXERCISE 5: Substitute.

'Ua alu le ēvaga a tama i le 'auala.

The boys have gone for a stroll (in the moonlight) on the road.

1. *savaliga a teine*.  
2. *matamataga a lo'omātutua i le 'auala*.  
3. *tamo'ega a tamaiti i le 'auala*.  
4. *taufetuliga a teineiti i le 'auala*.  
5. *toleniga a le 'au tā' a'alo*.  
6. *fa'aaliga ta'avale teuteuina i le 'auala*.<sup>14</sup>  
7. *fa'atauga nusipepa*.  
8. *sasaga vao i le falesā*.<sup>15</sup>

The girls have gone for a walk.  
The old women have gone for a look at the road.  
The young boys/children have gone for a run on the road.  
The little girls have gone for a run on the road.  
The athletes have gone for training/running.  
The procession of the decorated cars is on the road.  
They have gone to buy newspapers. (lit. The newspaper buying has gone.)  
They have gone to cut the grass at the church.

<sup>14</sup> *fa'aaliga* n., display, exhibition (< *fa'aali* v.t., show + *-ga* nominaliser)

<sup>15</sup> *sasa le vao* cut the grass with a long bushknife (< *sasa* v.t., beat)

9. *moaga vao i le faleā'oga.*<sup>16</sup>

They have gone to mow the lawn at school.

10. *toliga 'ulu i le fa'ato'aga.*<sup>17</sup>

They have gone to collect breadfruit from the plantation.

EXERCISE 6: Substitute.

*E mafai ona 'e sau 'ae le'i tāina le valu?*

Can you come before eight o'clock?

1. 'ae le'i 'āmataina le ā'oga

before school starts

2. 'ae le'i savalia le 'auala<sup>18</sup>

before people walk on the road

3. 'ae le'i vivini moa

before the roosters crow

4. 'ae le'i feala le tou 'āiga<sup>19</sup>

before your family wakes up

5. 'ae le'i faia le to'ona'i

before the big Sunday meal

6. 'ae le'i tū'ua le lotu

before church finishes

7. 'ae le'i momoe le mātou 'āiga

before our (pl.exc.) family sleeps

8. 'ae le'i taunu'u mai le faife'au

before the pastor arrives

9. 'ae le'i ō tamaiti i le ā'oga

before the children go to school

10. 'ae le'i pisi tele

before it gets very busy

EXERCISE 7: Translate.

1. The girls have returned from their walk.
2. The woman has come back from her shopping.
3. Taealofa spent the whole day sewing your (sg.) dress.
4. I like the new dress very much.
5. Did you see my new dress?
6. I have been waiting here for you for two hours!
7. I am angry with you.
8. Why are you angry with me?
9. You always talk back!
10. What time was I supposed to come?
11. I did my homework. If I pass my exam, I will get a scholarship.
12. Tina will do the cooking, and Mose will prepare the oven.

<sup>16</sup> *moa* v.t., to mow

<sup>17</sup> *toli* v.t., (of fruit) twist off and fetch down

<sup>18</sup> *savalia* v.t., walk on

<sup>19</sup> *ala*, pl. *feala* v.i., wake up



## LESSON 14

### 14.1 *Lelei* AND *fa'alelei* – THE PREFIX *fa'a*

Many intransitive verbs can be changed into transitive verbs by the prefix *fa'a*.

#### INTRANSITIVE VERB

<i>leaga</i>	be bad, damaged
<i>fou</i>	be new
<i>moe</i>	sleep
<i>ola</i>	live, run (of engines, etc.)
<i>vave</i>	be fast

#### TRANSITIVE VERB

<i>fa'aleaga</i>	make bad, spoil, ruin, damage
<i>fa'afou</i>	make new, repair
<i>fa'amoe</i>	put to sleep
<i>fa'aola</i>	save, spare, turn on or start (the engine, fire, etc.)
<i>fa'avave</i>	hurry

*'Ua leaga le pasi.*

The bus is damaged.

*'Ua fa'aleaga e tamaiti le pasi.*

The children damaged the bus.

The prefix *fa'a* can also derive transitive verbs from nouns.

#### NOUN

<i>suka</i>	sugar
<i>māsima</i>	salt
<i>pata</i>	butter

#### TRANSITIVE VERB

<i>fa'asuka</i>	sweeten with sugar; add sugar
<i>fa'amāsima</i>	add salt
<i>fa'apata</i>	butter (the bread)

*'Ua 'uma ona fa'asuka lau tī?*

Is your tea already sweetened?

*E te fia mana'o e fa'amāsima lau supo?*

Do you want to salt your soup?

*Fa'apata 'uma fasi falaoa!*

Butter all the slices of bread!

*Fa'a* has other meanings. It can, for instance, derive nouns from other nouns. These nouns often have the meaning 'something like the original noun'.

<i>fanua</i>	land, property
<i>gata</i>	snake
<i>fafine</i>	woman

<i>fa'afanua</i>	map
<i>fa'agata</i>	vaccine
<i>fa'afāfine</i>	a male who behaves like a woman

*E telē lo'u fanua.*

My property is big.

*E iai sau fa'afanua?*

Do you have a map?

Furthermore, *fa'a* derives adjectives from nouns or from nouns with articles. These adjectives cannot be used as predicates like *lelei* 'good' (cf. §4.7).

#### NOUN

*atunu'u* country, nation

*le tausaga* the year

#### ADJECTIVE

*fa'aatunu'u* national

*fa'aletausaga* annual

*E fai tēuga fa'aatunu'u a teine.*

The girls will wear the national costumes.

*'O le fono a le PSA e fai fa'aletausaga.*

The PSA meeting is annual.<sup>1</sup>

The prefix *fa'a-* also derives adjectives and the names of languages from country names:

*Siāmani* Germany

*fa'aSiāmani* German

*Peretānia* Britain

*fa'aPeretānia* British, English

*Sāmoa* Samoa

*fa'aSāmoa* Samoan, Samoan language, culture

The word *fa'aSāmoa* refers to both the Samoan language and the Samoan culture:

*Tautala fa'aSāmoa!*

Speak Samoan!

*O le fa'aipoipoga fa'aSāmoa.*

The Samoan wedding.

## 14.2 Alofa AND alofagia – THE TRANSITIVE ENDING

A number of intransitive verbs can be made transitive by a special ending (suffix). The form of this suffix varies and has to be learned for every verb.

#### INTRANSITIVE VERB

*alofa* love

*fesili* ask

*oso* jump

*tagi* cry

*vala'au* shout, call

*manatu* think

*talanoa* talk

#### TRANSITIVE VERB

*alofagia* care for someone with love

*fesiligia* question, interrogate

*osofia* attack

*tagisia* cry over, ask for help

*vala'aulia* call s.o. to come, invite

*manatua* remember

*talanoaina* discuss

<sup>1</sup> PSA [pi:sa:'a:] Public Service Association

## INTRANSITIVE

*E alofa le tinā i lana fānau.*  
 v.i. noun phrase i-noun phrase  
 The mother loves her children.

*Na fesili le fa'amasino i le pāgotā.*  
 The judge asked the culprit.

## TRANSITIVE

*E alofagia e le tinā lana fānau.*  
 v.t. e-noun phrase noun phrase  
 The mother takes care of her children with love.

*Na fesiligia e le fa'amasino le pāgotā.*  
 The judge interrogated the culprit.

14.3 *Fa'alua* 'twice', *fa'atolu* 'three times'

Frequentative numerals like *fa'alua* 'twice' express how many times someone does something or how many times something happens.

<i>fa'afia</i>	how many times?
<i>fa'alua</i>	twice
<i>fa'atolu</i>	three times
<i>fa'afā</i>	four times

The numerals are formed by the prefix *fa'a* and the cardinal numeral (§10.1). The action or the event is expressed by an *ona* clause.

*Sā fa'atolu ona tatalo si toea'ina.*  
 three.times that pray the poor.old.man  
 The poor old man prayed three times.

*'Ua fa'afia ona lua ō mai 'i'inei?*  
 how.many.times that you come here  
 How many times have you (two) come here?

*'Ua fa'aono ona mā ō mai i Sāmoa.*  
 We have come to Samoa for the sixth time.  
 (lit. It has been six times that we came to Samoa.)

14.4 *Fai* AND *faia* – THE SHORT AND LONG FORMS OF TRANSITIVE VERBS

The transitive verbs have two forms, a short form and a long form, which are used in different contexts. In spoken colloquial Samoan the long form is derived from the short form by the addition of *-a*, whereas in formal Samoan the ending is *-ina* or irregular like the transitive suffixes.

Simple form	Colloquial long form	Formal long form	Meaning
<i>'ai</i>	<i>'aia</i>	<i>'aiina</i>	eat
<i>fa'atau</i>	<i>fa'ataua</i>	<i>fa'atauina</i>	buy, sell
<i>fai</i>	<i>faia</i>	<i>faiaina</i>	do, make
<i>totogi</i>	<i>totōgia</i>	<i>totogiina</i>	pay
<i>sasa</i>	<i>sasā</i>	<i>sasaina</i>	smack

The long form is mainly used in three contexts:

1. when the sentence begins with the noun phrase expressing the agent (the doer of the action)
2. when the verb is preceded by a preverbal pronoun
3. when the sentence is negative.

Short form	<i>Na <u>fai</u> e Pita le mea lea.</i>	Peter <u>did</u> this thing.
Fronted agent	<i>'O ai na <u>faia</u> le mea lea?</i>	Who <u>did</u> this thing?
	<i>'O Pita na <u>faia</u>.</i>	Peter <u>did</u> it.
	<i>'O a'u na <u>faia</u>.</i>	I <u>did</u> it.
Preverbal pronoun	<i>Na 'ou <u>faia</u>.</i>	I <u>did</u> it.
Negative sentence	<i>E le'i <u>faia</u> e Pita.</i>	Peter <u>did</u> nt do it.
	<i>'Ou te le'i <u>faia</u>.</i>	I <u>did</u> not do it.

*'Ua 'ai e le 'isumu le koko.*

The mouse has eaten the cocoa.

*'O ai na 'aia le koko?*

Who ate the cocoa?

*Alu Sione e fa'atau mai se suka.*

John go and buy some sugar.

*'O ai na fa'ataua le suka?*

Who bought the sugar?

*Na totogi e Losa le 'aitālafu.*

Rose paid the account.

*E le'i totogia e Pita.*

Peter did not pay it.

The long form is also used in announcements of particular events.

*'O le 'ā faia le bingo taeao.*

There will be bingo tomorrow.

*'O le 'ā faia le siva tele i le pō o le aso Faraile.*

There will be a big dance on Friday night.

#### 14.5 'DON'T DO IT!' – NEGATIVE COMMANDS

Negative commands are expressed by 'aua 'don't' and sōia 'stop'. They are either followed by a nominalisation or by a verbal clause. The verbal clause has the tense particle *e* or *te* (cf. §4.3 and §7.1) or the particle *ne'i* (cf. §15.3).

*'Aua le pisa!*

Don't make noise!

*Sōia le pisa!*

Stop making noise!

*'Aua 'e te pisa!*

Don't make noise!

*Sōia 'e te pisa!*

Stop making noise!

*'Aua ne'i 'e pisa!*

Don't make any noise! (Warning: Don't you dare make any noise!)

When the verb is transitive, it must have the long form.

'Aua le totōgia le pili lea!	Don't pay this bill!
'Aua le fasia le mai le!	Don't hit the dog!
'Aua le faiaina le mea lea!	Don't do this!

#### 14.6 CONVERSATION: *Fa'aaogā le telefoni* 'Use the telephone'

<i>Malie lou loto pe mafai ona 'ou fa'aaogāina lau telefoni?</i> <sup>2</sup>	Please may I use your telephone?
<i>Tālofa e, e fa'asā e le pule se tagata 'ese ona fa'aaogāina le telefoni</i> <sup>3</sup>	Poor you, the boss does not allow strangers to use the telephone.
<i>Sē 'o le fe'au fa'avave lava.</i> <sup>4</sup>	It's a very urgent message.
<i>E mafai lava ona 'ou totogiina.</i> <sup>5</sup>	I can pay for it.
<i>Fa'atali se'i o'u alu 'ou te fesili.</i>	Wait. I'll go and ask.
<i>Fa'afetai lava.</i>	Thank you very much.
<i>Fai mai le pule e tatau ona totogi le luasefulu sene muamua.</i> <sup>6</sup>	The boss said you must pay 20c first.
<i>E lē āfāina. E mafai lava ona 'ou totogiina.</i> <sup>7</sup>	It doesn't matter. I can pay it.

#### 14.7 CONVERSATION: *Pamu penisini* 'Petrol station'

<i>Mālō ali'i.</i>	Good day, sir.
<i>Fa'amolemole utu se penisini luasefulu tālā.</i> <sup>8</sup>	Please put in \$20 worth of petrol.
<i>Ia 'ua lelei.</i>	Okay.
<i>Fa'amolemole, siaki ma le 'ea o pa'u.</i>	Please, also check the air in the tyres.
<i>Malie, e lē faia i 'inei.</i>	Sorry, we don't do it here.

<sup>2</sup> *malie lou loto* would you mind? (lit. does your heart agree); *pe mafai ona* (lit. if it is possible that)

<sup>3</sup> *fa'asā* v.t., forbid, not allow; *pule* n., boss; *tagata 'ese* n., stranger; *fa'aaogā* v.t. (*fa'aaogāina*), use

<sup>4</sup> *sē* interj., expressing that you disagree; *fe'au* n., message; *fa'avave* v.t., speed up, hurry s.th., here: urgent

<sup>5</sup> *totogi* v.t. (*totogiina*), pay (cf. §14.4)

<sup>6</sup> *muamua* v.i., (be) first

<sup>7</sup> *lē āfāina* v.i., do not matter

<sup>8</sup> *utu* v.t., fill

## 14.8 EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Substitute the underlined word.

'Aua le pisa!

1. *pa'ō*
2. *pepelo*
3. *tautala*
4. *tagi*
5. *matamoe*
6. *tamo'e*
7. *paiē*
8. *tautala so'o*
9. *misa*
10. *moe*

Don't make a noise!

- make a sound
- lie
- talk
- cry
- be sleepy
- run
- be lazy
- talk too much
- fight
- sleep

EXERCISE 2: Substitute.

'Aua le toe faiga lau 'upu valea lenā.<sup>9</sup>

1. *āmio*
2. *fa'a'upuga*
3. *māsani*<sup>10</sup>
4. *tala*
5. *'ata*
6. *savali*
7. *pepelo*
8. *galuega*
9. *faifaia*
10. *fa'amatalaga*

Don't you say that swear word again.

- Don't you behave like that again.
- Don't you say that phrase again.
- Don't you behave like that anymore.
- Don't tell that story again.
- Don't laugh like that again.
- Don't walk like that again.
- Don't tell that lie again.
- Don't do that job again.
- Don't be so slow like that again.
- Don't give that explanation again.

EXERCISE 3: Substitute the underlined word.

'Aua 'e te tagivale!

1. *ulavale*
2. *palauvale*
3. *taufā'alili*
4. *fiapoto*
5. *gutuso*

Don't be whingey (lit. cry too much)!

- be mischievous
- swear
- make faces
- be conceited
- talk back

<sup>9</sup> *faiga* colloquial long form of *fai*<sup>10</sup> *māsani* v.i., be used to; n., habit

6. <i>gaoi</i>	steal
7. <i>gugutu</i>	make up stories
8. <i>faitala</i>	gossip
9. <i>matanana</i>	be a pain; spoilt
10. <i>pepelo</i>	lie

EXERCISE 4: Substitute.

'Aua ne'i e <u>tuai</u> !	Don't you <u>be late</u> !
1. <i>inupia</i>	drink beer
2. <i>ulaula</i>	smoke
3. <i>'onā leaga</i>	get seriously drunk (lit. be bad drunk)
4. <i>tautala</i>	talk
5. <i>tagi</i>	cry
6. <i>'ai tele</i>	be greedy
7. <i>palauvale</i>	swear
8. <i>'ata</i>	laugh
9. <i>minoi</i>	move
10. <i>mafatua</i>	sneeze

EXERCISE 5: Change the positive commands into negative commands using all three constructions of 'aua.

1. <i>Tū i luga!</i> (sg.)	'Aua le tū i luga! 'Aua 'e te tū i luga! 'Aua ne'i 'e tū i luga!	Don't stand up!
2. <i>Nofo i lalo!</i> (sg.)	'Aua le nofo i lalo! 'Aua 'e te nofo i lalo! 'Aua ne'i 'e nofo i lalo!	Don't sit down!
3. <i>Tali le telefoni!</i> (sg.)	'Aua le talia le telefoni! 'Aua 'e te talia le telefoni! 'Aua ne'i 'e talia le telefoni!	Don't answer the telephone!
4. <i>Totogi le pili!</i> (du.)	'Aua le totōgia le pili! 'Aua lua te totōgia le pili! 'Aua ne'i lua totōgia le pili!	Don't pay the bill!
5. <i>Lafo le tusi!</i> (pl.)	'Aua le lafoa le tusi! 'Aua tou te lafoa le tusi! 'Aua ne'i tou lafoa le tusi!	Don't mail the letter!

EXERCISE 6: Change the positive statement into a negative one.

- |                             |                              |                                      |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. 'Ua tatala le fale'oloa. | The shop has opened.         | <i>Ele'i tatalaina le fale'oloa.</i> |
| 2. 'Ua 'amata le lotu.      | The service has begun.       |                                      |
| 3. 'Ua sau le minisitā.     | The minister has come.       |                                      |
| 4. 'Ua taunu'u le pāsese.   | The passengers have arrived. |                                      |
| 5. Na 'ai la'u fasi falaoa. | I ate my piece of bread.     |                                      |
| 6. Na moa le vao.           | The grass was mowed.         |                                      |
| 7. Na sasa le vao.          | The grass was cut.           |                                      |
| 8. Na mū le fale o Simi.    | Jimmy's house burnt.         |                                      |
| 9. Sa loka le falesā.       | The church was locked.       |                                      |
| 10. Sa ma'i lo'u tamā.      | My father was sick.          |                                      |

EXERCISE 7: Substitute.

*Malie lou loto, pe mafai ona 'ou fa'aaogāina lau telefoni?*

Please, may I use your telephone?

- |                            |                 |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. <i>lau peni</i>         | your pen        |
| 2. <i>lau seleulu</i>      | your scissors   |
| 3. <i>lau laulau</i>       | your table      |
| 4. <i>lau uati</i>         | your watch      |
| 5. <i>lou nofoa</i>        | your chair      |
| 6. <i>lou fa'amalu</i>     | your umbrella   |
| 7. <i>lou potu</i>         | your room       |
| 8. <i>lou 'ōfisa</i>       | your office     |
| 9. <i>lou pūlou</i>        | your hat        |
| 10. <i>lou solo tā'ele</i> | your bath towel |

EXERCISE 8: Substitute.

*Fa'atali atu se'i o'u alu e 'aumai se mea fa'apipi'i.*

Wait (over there for me to come back),  
I'll go and get a band aid.

- |                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. 'aumai la'u 'ato        | get my bag                |
| 2. su'e lau faila          | search your file          |
| 3. va'ai le pule           | see the boss              |
| 4. talanoa i le failautusi | talk to the secretary     |
| 5. fa'anoi i lo'u tamā     | ask my dad for permission |
| 6. fa'amoe le pepe         | put the baby to bed       |
| 7. fa'aola le ta'avale     | start the car             |
| 8. 'aumai se tupe          | get some money            |
| 9. tapē le mōlī            | turn off the light        |
| 10. kī le mōlī             | turn on the light         |



## EXERCISE 9: Give negative answers.

1. 'Ua tatala le fale'oloa?	Is the shop already open?	<i>E le'i tatalaina.</i>	It is not opened yet.
2. 'Ua tapuni le fale'oloa?	Is the shop already closed?	<i>E le'i tapunia.</i>	It is not closed yet.
3. 'Ua totogi le pili?	Has the bill been paid?	<i>E le'i totōgia.</i>	It has not been paid yet.
4. 'Ua fufulu le potu tā'ele?	Has the bathroom been cleaned?	<i>E le'i fufūlua.</i>	It hasn't been cleaned yet.
5. 'Ua fai le mea'ai?	Has the food been cooked?	<i>E le'i faia.</i>	It hasn't been cooked yet.
6. 'Ua vili leoleo?	Have the police been rung?	<i>E le'i vilia.</i>	They haven't been rung yet.
7. 'Ua saini le siaki?	Has the cheque been signed?	<i>E le'i sainia.</i>	It has not been signed yet.
8. 'Ua vali le fale?	Has the house been painted?	<i>E le'i valia.</i>	It has not been painted yet.
9. 'Ua teu le 'ōfisa?	Has the office been tidied up?	<i>E le'i teua.</i>	It hasn't been tidied up yet.
10. 'Ua tā le logo o le lotu?	Has the bell rung for the church service (been struck)?	<i>E le'i tāina.</i>	It has not been struck yet.

## EXERCISE 10: Translate.

- How many times did you ring my office?
- Maybe three or four times.
- Don't ring so often.
- Try to ring me in the evening.
- What is your home number? 24 733.
- Someone broke into the pastor's house. (lit. The thief went into the pastor's house.)
- Who did it?
- I don't know. The house wasn't locked properly.
- Were the police called?
- No, the telephone didn't work.

## LESSON 15

### 15.1 SEVERAL EXPRESSIONS FOR 'WHY? – BECAUSE...'

There are several expressions for 'why?'. Compare:

*Na 'ou alu i Apia.*

I went to Apia.

*'Aiseā?*

Why?

*E tala mai sa'u tupe.*

To withdraw some money (lit. some of my money).

*'O le ā le mea 'ua 'e fiafia ai?*

Why are you happy? (lit. What is the thing you are happy about?)

*'Ua maua la'u tupe mai Niu Sila.*

I got my money from New Zealand.

*'O le ā le mea e te tagi ai?*

Why do you cry?

*'Ua fasi a'u e le tamaitiiti lale.*

That child over there hit me.

The word 'aiseā is mainly used in isolation without a whole sentence, although in more formal language you can hear:

*'Aiseā na alu ai le tamāloa i Apia?*

Why did the man go to Apia?

Note that the sentences beginning 'O le ā le mea...? Why...?' and 'Aiseā...? 'Why...?' contain the particle *ai* referring back to *le mea* and 'aiseā.

When you want to explain the reason for something, you have the choice of several expressions. You can use the word *leaga*, if the reason is something bad or unpleasant. This word *leaga* 'because', which is related to *leaga* 'bad', is seldom used in written or formal language. Other expressions translating 'because' are 'o lea, 'auā or 'ona.

*E le'i mafai ona 'ou savali i Lalomanu  
leaga sā timu.*

I couldn't walk to Lalomanu because it was raining.

*E lē mafai ona alu le fafine i Niu Sila  
leaga e le'i maua sona visa.*

The woman cannot go to New Zealand because she hasn't got a visa.

*E lē mafai ona ā'oga le tama leaga e ma'i.*

The boy cannot go to school because he is sick.

Tapena le fale 'ona e ō mai mālō.

Tidy up the house because guests will come.

E mafai ona moe 'umi i le Aso To'ona'i  
'ona e leai se galuega.

It is possible to sleep in on Saturday because  
there is no work.

Tātou te lē ō e tā'e'e'ele leaga e fa'asā e le  
faife'au ta'elega i Aso Sā.

We do not go swimming because the pastor  
forbade swimming on Sundays.

Na ita lo'u tinā, leaga 'ua galo iate a'u ona  
lafo lana tusi.<sup>1</sup>

My mother was angry because I had forgotten  
to post her letter.

The word 'ona can also be used with noun phrases, e.g. 'ona 'o le timu 'because of the rain'. Note that it is combined with 'o in this construction.

E lē mafai ona alu 'ona 'o le timu.

It is not possible to go because of the rain.

'Ua 'ou ita 'ona 'o lona tuai so'o.

I am angry because he is often late. (lit.  
because of his being often late).

Na mā tēte'a ma Sina 'ona 'o lona loto  
mālosi.<sup>2</sup>

Sina and I got divorced because of her  
stubbornness.

While clauses with *leaga* and *auā* must always follow the main clause, you can start a sentence with 'ona or 'ona 'o le... In this case, the verb of the main clause must be followed by *ai*.

'Ona 'ua tuai tele lo'u pepa malaga,  
e lē mafai ai ona 'ou alu i Niu Sila.

Because my visa was too late, I cannot go to  
New Zealand.

'Ona 'o le tuai tele o lo'u pepa malaga  
e lē mafai ai ona 'ou alu i Niu Sila.

Because my visa was too late, I cannot go to  
New Zealand.

## 15.2 'IF YOU GO TO NEW ZEALAND...' – CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

There are two kinds of if-clauses (conditional clauses). Compare:

'Āfai 'e te alu i Niu Sila, 'ou te alu fo'i.

If you go to New Zealand, I'll also go.

'Āfai 'o le tonu lenā, 'ua lelei.<sup>3</sup>

If this is the decision, it's alright.

'Āfai tou te sisiva, fai ni 'ofu mānanaia.

If you (pl.) go dancing, put on some nice  
clothes.

'Ana 'ou lē moe 'umi, 'ou te lē tuai i le  
galuega.

If I hadn't slept long, I wouldn't be late for  
work.

'Ana 'e pasi, 'ua faigōfie ona maua  
lau galuega.<sup>4</sup>

If you had passed (the exam), you would  
easily find work.

<sup>1</sup> galov.i., be forgotten, cf. Exercise 1 (§15.9)

<sup>2</sup> loto mālosi n., strong will, stubbornness (< loto n., will, heart)

<sup>3</sup> tonu n., decision

<sup>4</sup> pasi v.i., pass

*'Ana 'o lo'u tinā, 'ua 'ote mai iā tātou.*<sup>5</sup>

If she were my mother, she would scold us (pl.).

You use *'āfai*, when you think of a situation which might happen, but *'ana* when you imagine a situation which did not or would never come true. In the spoken language *'āfai* is often replaced by *'a*.

*'A timu taeao, 'ua lē o'o ta'aloga.*

If it rains tomorrow, the games will be cancelled (...will not come).

The conditional clause can also follow the main clause, in which case the particle *pē* precedes *'āfai* or *'ana*.

*'Ou te lē tuai pē 'ana 'ou lē moe'umi.*

I would not be late for work, if I didn't sleep long.

*'Ou te alu i Apia pē 'ana ē timu.*

I would have gone to Apia, if it hadn't rained.

*'Ou te tuai pē 'ana 'ou lē alu i le ta'avale la'u pāsese.*<sup>6</sup>

I would have been late, if I had not gone by taxi.

### 15.3 'THIS SHOULD NOT HAPPEN' – THE PARTICLE *ne'i*

The particle *ne'i* expresses that something should not happen. It is the negative counterpart of *'ia* (cf. §9.3.).

*Va'ai le ipu, ne'i ta'e.*<sup>7</sup>

Watch the glass, don't break it (in case it breaks).

*Alu loa ne'i 'e tuai.*

Go now, so that you won't be late./Go now or you will be late.

In negative commands *ne'i* combines with *'a*.

*'Aua ne'i 'e ulavale.*

Don't be naughty (sg.)!

*'Aua ne'i lua ō mai.*

Don't come (du.)!

*'Aua ne'i tou sisiva.*

Don't dance (pl.)!

### 15.4 'INA CLAUSES – CONJUNCTIONS

The meaning of the conjunction *'ina* depends on the context and the choice of the following particle.

*'ina 'ua alu...*

when (he) went...

*'ina 'ia alu...*

in order to go...

*'ina ne'i alu...*

so that (he) would not go...

<sup>5</sup> 'ote v.i., scold

<sup>6</sup> ta'avale la'u pāsese taxi (lit. car carrying passengers)

<sup>7</sup> va'ai v.t., watch

*Na te'i i le fafine 'ina 'ua va'ai i le aitū.<sup>8</sup>*

The woman was shocked when she saw the ghost.

*Sā fiafia tele Lōsa 'ina 'ua feiloa'i i ma lona uso.<sup>9</sup>*

Lōsa was happy when she met her sister.

*Tatalo 'ina 'ia maua se fesoasoani.*

Pray in order to get some help.

*Fa'asusu le pepe 'ina ne'i ma'i.<sup>10</sup>*

Breastfeed the baby so that it won't get sick.

*'Aua e te alu i le ma'umaga 'ina ne'i e tuai mai i le fale.*

Don't go to the taro plantation, so that you won't come home late.

### 15.5 'AFTER', 'BEFORE', 'UNTIL' – MORE TIME EXPRESSIONS

There are no words which directly translate the English words 'after' and 'before'. To express the idea that something happened or will happen after some other event, you use the verb 'uma' 'be finished'.

*Na 'uma loa le Kilisimasi mā ō i Sini.*

We went to Sydney just after Christmas.  
(lit. Christmas was just finished, we went to Sydney.)

*Se'i 'uma le fono tātou ō.*

Let's go after the meeting. (lit. Let the meeting be all over, we go.)

*'O ia mea 'uma na tutupu  
'ae fa'ato'ā 'uma atu le afā mata'utia.<sup>11</sup>*

All these things happened just after the terrible hurricane. (lit. All these things happened, but the terrible hurricane was just finished.)

*Na maliu lo'u tamā fa'ato'ā 'uma le Taua  
Tele Lōna Lua a le Lalolagi.<sup>12</sup>*

My father died just after the Second World War. (lit. ...the second big war of the world was just finished.)

Accordingly you translate a sentence like 'After we had eaten' by 'uma in combination with an *ona* clause:

*Se'i 'uma ona tapena le fale, tātou 'a'ai.*

Let's eat after we have tidied up the house.

*Na fa'ato'ā 'uma ona fau le fale 'ae mū.*

The house burnt just after it was built.

A completely different phrase is used to express that something happened a short time after something else: *e le'i 'umi*, 'ae 'shortly afterwards' means literally 'it was not long, but...'

<sup>8</sup> *te'i* v.i., be shocked, surprised; *aitū* n., ghost, spirit

<sup>9</sup> *feiloa'i* v.i., meet

<sup>10</sup> *fa'asusu* v.t., breastfeed

<sup>11</sup> *fa'ato'ā* adv., just; *mata'utia* v.i., (be) terrible

<sup>12</sup> *taua* n., war; *lalolagi* n., world

*E le'i 'umi, 'ae taunu'u le pasi.*

*E le'i 'umi ona 'āmata le fono  
'ae fa'amāvae le failautusi.<sup>13</sup>*

Shortly afterwards the bus arrived.

Shortly after the meeting started, the secretary resigned.

Note also the following expressions which translate 'after' when you talk about particular times of the day.

*Sau pe 'ā te'a le lima.*

Come after five o'clock! (lit. Come when the five is passed!)

*Na sau le tama 'ua te'a le lima.*

The boy came after five o'clock. (lit. The boy came when the five was passed.)

As mentioned above, there is no word for 'before' in Samoan equal to an English term. When you want to say 'Wash your hands, before you eat' you say something like 'Wash your hands, but you have not eaten yet'.

*Fafano lima 'a 'o le'i 'ai.*

wash the.hands but PROG not.yet eat

Wash your hands, before you eat.

Similarly, 'before Christmas' is translated by an expression which literally means 'but Christmas hasn't been reached yet'.

*Na lafo mai le tupe, 'a 'o le'i o'o i le Kilisimasi.*

PAST send hither the money but PROG not.yet reach to the Christmas

He sent the money before Christmas (lit. but Christmas was not reached yet).

*E sau Fa'a'uma 'a 'o le'i o'o i le Kilisimasi.* Fa'a'uma will come before Christmas.

*Sau 'a 'o le'i tāina le lima.*

Come before five o'clock. (lit. Come it hasn't struck five yet.)

The idea of 'until a certain event or a certain date' is expressed by *se'i o'o* 'may be reached' or just by *se'i*.

*'Ou te nofo i Apia, se'i o'o i le Kilisimasi.* I'll stay in Apia until Christmas. (lit. may Christmas be reached).

*Se'i o'o taeao.*

Until tomorrow.

*Fa'atali se'i toe fo'i mai lou tinā.*

Wait until your mother comes back.

For 'until a certain time of the day', you say *se'i tā*... 'may it strike...':

*Fa'atali se'i tā le lima.*

Wait until five o'clock.

Another means to say 'until something happens' or 'until somebody does something', is the conjunction *se'ia*, which is never followed by preverbal pronouns.

<sup>13</sup> *fa'amāvae* v.i., 1. part. 2. resign; *failautusi* n., secretary

*E 'āmata atu i 'ine i le savaliga, se'ia o'o i le māketi fou.*

The walk goes from here to the new market.  
(lit. The walk starts from here, until it reaches the new market.)

### 15.6 USEFUL PHRASES: *Fa'amolemole...* 'Please...'

There are many different ways to ask someone for a favour. Here are a few examples. Remember that you have to use respectful words (u.f.) when you ask a person of high status.

*Fa'amolemole pē mafai ona 'e alu atu ma lafo atu la'u tusi?*

Could you please post my letter on your way? (lit. Please, whether it is possible that you go and mail my letter?)

*Fa'amolemole pē 'e te malaga i Apia pe mafai ona 'e 'avatua la'u tusi e lafo?*<sup>14</sup>

Please, if you go to Apia, could you take my letter and post it?

*Fa'amolemole pē 'e te finagalo malie pe mafai ona 'avatu la'u tusi i Apia?*<sup>15</sup>

Please, if you don't mind, could you take my letter to Apia?

If you want to say no, you can answer:

*Malie lou loto e lē talafeagai ma lou mana'o.*<sup>16</sup>

Sorry, it is not as you wish. (lit. it is not in accordance with your wish).

*Finagalo malie 'ou te lē o'o i le falemeli.*

I am very sorry, I am not going to the post office.

Asking for money is not a taboo or bad manners in Samoan culture. It is usually a relative or someone that you know who will ask you. You might hear the following questions:

*Fa'amolemole mātout e fia maua lava sau fesoasoani.*

Please, we want to get your help.

*Fa'amolemole lava,  
pē 'ā 'e finagalo malie i ai  
pē mafai mai lava sau luasefulu tālā  
se'i o'u fa'aaogāina.*<sup>17</sup>

Please, if you don't mind,  
may I ask you for \$20?  
(lit. ...could I possibly use your \$20?)

*Fa'amolemole na 'ou sau  
pē malie lou loto,  
'aumai sau tupe  
se'i o'u pāsese ai i Apia.*<sup>18</sup>

Please, I have come,  
if you wouldn't mind,  
give me some (of your) money,  
(so I may use it) for my fare to Apia.

<sup>14</sup> 'avatua (long form of avatu) v.t., take

<sup>15</sup> finagalo v.i.(u.f.), want; malie v.i., agree

<sup>16</sup> talafeagai ma v.i., be in accordance with

<sup>17</sup> pē 'ā 'e finagalo malie i ai (u.f.), if you don't mind; fa'aaogāina long form of fa'aaogā v.t., use

<sup>18</sup> pē malie lou loto if you don't mind; pāsese 1. n., fare, 2. v., use for paying the fare

La'i, 'ua 'ou sulu mai i lau tōfā,  
 'ia 'e alofagia lo'u mafatiaga.  
 'Ua 'ou o'o mai e 'ai'oi atu  
 pē mafai mai lava sau selau tālā  
 se'i fai ai lo'u fa'alavelave.  
 E toe totogi mai lava  
 pē 'ā maua mai la'u tupe mai Niu Sila.<sup>19</sup>

Fa'amolemole 'aumai lava sau tupe  
 se'i o'u alu ai i le falema'i  
 leaga 'ua tīgā lo'u manava,  
 'ae le'i maua mai se tupe  
 mai lo'u atali'i i Apia.

The following answers may help you to say no.

Malie lou loto  
 'ua tele le alofa atu,  
 'ae 'ua leai ma se tupe 'o iā a'u  
 i le taimi nei.

Finagalo malie 'ua 'ou lēlavā  
 fa'alogo so'o atu i au 'aisiga.<sup>20</sup>

La'i, I have come to your honour,  
 have pity with my distress,  
 I have come to implore you,  
 if you could lend me \$100  
 to use for my family affairs.  
 It will be paid back  
 when I get my money from New Zealand.

Please give me some money,  
 so that I could go to the hospital,  
 because my stomach aches,  
 but I haven't got any money  
 from my son in Apia.

I am sorry,  
 I really pity you,  
 but I haven't got any money with me  
 at the moment.

Please, I am tired of always  
 hearing you beg for something.

### 15.7 CONVERSATION: 'Ua pisi tele le 'auala 'The road is too busy'

'Ua leva ona 'e sau?

Have you been here long?

E leai, pē 'ua lima nei mīnute.<sup>21</sup>

No, about five minutes now.

Pisi tele le 'auala i le tele o ta'avale feoa'i.<sup>22</sup>

The road is too busy with so many cars  
 travelling.

E sili ai le vave sau 'ae le'i pisi tele le 'auala.<sup>23</sup>

It's better to come early before the road  
 gets very busy.

E sili ai le pu'e o le pasi.<sup>24</sup>

It's best to catch the bus.

'Ae ātili ai ona 'e tuai i le tū so'o o le pasi.<sup>25</sup>

But you will come even later when the bus is  
 always stopping.

E sa'o ai 'oe.

You are right.

Lona uiga e tatau lava ona 'ou vave usu mai.<sup>26</sup> That means, I have to come early.

<sup>19</sup> sulu v.i., take refuge to; alofagia v.t., treat with caring love; mafatiaga n., distress; 'ai'oi v.i., implore; fa'alavelave n., family affairs like funerals or weddings; accident, trouble

<sup>20</sup> lēlavā v.t., be exhausted, be tired of; 'aisiga n., begging, asking

<sup>21</sup> pē adv., about

<sup>22</sup> pisi v.i., busy; tele 1. adv., very, 2. v.i., (be) many; i le tele o ta'avale because of (there) being many of the cars; feoa'i v.i. (pl. of fealua'i), go around

<sup>23</sup> vave v.i., fast

<sup>24</sup> pu'e v.t., catch

<sup>25</sup> ātili v.i., (be) more, increase; tū v.i., stop; so'o adv., always, very often

<sup>26</sup> lona uiga that means, therefore (lit. its meaning)



## 15.8 EXERCISES

## EXERCISE 1: Substitute.

This exercise helps to memorise the construction of the verb *galo* 'be forgotten'. The person who forgets something is expressed by *i*, *iā* or *ia te/iate* plus noun or pronoun.

'Ua *galo ia te a'u* lou aso *fānau*.

I have forgotten your birthday.

- |                                  |                      |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>i le lo'omatua</i>         | the old woman        |
| 2. <i>i le toea'ina</i>          | the old man          |
| 3. <i>i lou tinā</i>             | your (sg.) mother    |
| 4. <i>iā lātou</i>               | they                 |
| 5. <i>iā mātou</i>               | we (exc.pl.)         |
| 6. <i>i tagata 'uma</i>          | all people           |
| 7. <i>i le vasega 'ātoa</i>      | the whole class      |
| 8. <i>i le matāgaluega 'ātoa</i> | the whole department |
| 9. <i>i ou mātua</i>             | your (sg.) parents   |
| 10. <i>i le faiā'oga</i>         | the teacher          |

## EXERCISE 2: Substitute.

Manatua mai *lo'u* aso *fānau*.

Remember my birthday.

→ 'Aua ne'i *galo iate 'oe lo'u* aso *fānau*.

→ Don't forget my birthday.

- |   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1. <i>le fa'ata'ita'iga</i>                                   | the rehearsal                |
| 2. <i>le aso o tamā</i>                                       | father's day                 |
| 3. <i>le aso o tinā</i>                                       | mother's day                 |
| 4. <i>lo'u luafulutasi</i>                                    | my 21st                      |
| 5. <i>la'u fa'aipoipoga</i>                                   | my wedding                   |
| 6. <i>le lotu fa'amanatu</i>                                  | the memorial service         |
| 7. <i>le Aso Sā o Tamaiti</i>                                 | White Sunday                 |
| 8. <i>le fa'amanatuina o le mālō tūto'atasi</i> <sup>27</sup> | the independence anniversary |
| 9. <i>le fa'aulufalega o le falesā</i>                        | the opening of the church    |

## EXERCISE 3: Substitute.

'Aua ne'i *galo ona kī mōlī*.

Don't forget to turn the lights on.

- |                              |                |
|------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. <i>loka le fale</i>       | lock the house |
| 2. <i>fufulu le ta'avale</i> | clean the car  |
| 3. <i>fai le tāgamea</i>     | do the laundry |
| 4. <i>fafaga le maile</i>    | feed the dog   |

<sup>27</sup> *fa'amanatuina* n., anniversary; *tūto'atasi* v.i., be independent (stand by oneself)

- |   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| 5. <i>fa'atau mai se pata</i>             | buy some butter     |
| 6. <i>totogi le pili</i>                  | pay the bill        |
| 7. <i>tala mai se tupe</i>                | withdraw some money |
| 8. <i>tala mai sa'u vai</i> <sup>28</sup> | get my prescription |
| 9. <i>tapē mōlī</i>                       | turn off the lights |
| 10. <i>tapē le paipa</i>                  | turn off the tap    |

EXERCISE 4: Substitute.

Sau vave 'a'o le'i tāina le lima.

1. *vili le puleā'oga*
2. *momoli le tama i le ā'oga*
3. *alu i le māketi*
4. *teu le tupe*
5. *usu i le ma'umaga* <sup>29</sup>
6. *sau i lo'u 'ōfisa*
7. *na 'āmata le fono*
8. *na taunu'u le 'aumalaga* <sup>30</sup>

Come quickly before five o'clock.

- ring the principal
- take the boy to school
- go to the market
- deposit the money
- go to the taro plantation early in the morning
- come to my office
- the meeting started
- the visitors arrived

EXERCISE 5: Translate into English.

1. *Se'i 'uma le lotu, tātou ō i le fale o Makerita.*
2. *Se'i sau le pasi tā ō.*
3. *Se'i fai muamua la'u mea ā'oga, o'u moe ai.*
4. *Se'i tautau le tāgamea tā 'a'ai.*
5. *Se'i tatala le fale'oloa fa'atau mai se suka.*
6. *'Aua 'e te alu se'i o'u sau.*
7. *'Aua le pisa se'i fai le lotu.*
8. *'Aua 'e te sau se'i o'u vili atu.*
9. *'Aua tou te momoe se'i 'ou sau.*
10. *'Aua lua te sāvavali se'i sau le ta'avale.*

<sup>28</sup> *vai* n., water, medicine

<sup>29</sup> *usu* v.i., rise and leave early in the morning

<sup>30</sup> *taunu'u* v.i., arrive; *'aumalaga* n., group of visitors, party of travellers

## EXERCISE 6: Substitute, change and translate.

1. *E lē mafai ona 'e alu 'ona 'o le timu.* → *'Ona 'o le timu e lē mafai ai ona 'e alu.*
2. *ona 'ou alu 'ona e leai so'u pāsese* *'Ona e leai...*
3. *ona 'ou 'ai 'ona e tīgā lo'u nifo* *'Ona...*
4. *ona 'e ta'alo 'ona 'e te ma'i* *'Ona...*
5. *ona 'ou moe 'ona 'ou te matafefe*<sup>31</sup> *'Ona...*
6. *ona tatala le faitoto'a 'ona 'ua gau le kī*<sup>32</sup> *'Ona...*
7. *ona fai a'u mea ā'oga 'ona 'o le pisa* *'Ona...*
8. *ona tātou sāvavali 'ona 'ua pogisā* *'Ona...*
9. *ona tā'e'ele 'ona 'uapē le paipa* *'Ona...*
10. *ona maua sa'u moe 'ona 'o le pa'ō* *'Ona...*

## EXERCISE 7: Substitute.

*Na tupu le misa 'ae le 'i 'āmata le fono.*<sup>33</sup>

*The fight broke out* before the meeting started.

*na oso le ma'i o le tamāloa*<sup>34</sup>

the man became sick

*na muamua 'a'ai*<sup>35</sup>

they ate first

*na fia moe le peresitene*

the president was sleepy

*sā taunu 'u le Pālemia*

the Prime Minister arrived

*sā taga le ulaula*

smoking was allowed

## EXERCISE 8 Translate: 'You' always refers to a single person.

1. Why didn't you come to the rugby game?
2. I couldn't come, because I had guests.
3. Why didn't you ring me?
4. I rang you, but nobody answered the telephone.
5. When do you go to New Zealand?
6. If I get the money for the fare, I'll go before Christmas.
7. If I had more money, I would pay your fare.
8. Give me a call in case you get any news.
9. You can ring me at home after eight o'clock.
10. I won't be at home before eight o'clock.

<sup>31</sup> *matafefe* v.i., be scared

<sup>32</sup> *gau* v.i., break

<sup>33</sup> *tupu* v.i., grow, arise, break out

<sup>34</sup> *oso* v.i., break out; *ma'i* n., sickness

<sup>35</sup> *muamua* v.i., (be) first

## LESSON 16: TEXTS

### 16.1 'O le tatalo a le ali'i 'The Lord's prayer'

*Lo mātou Tamā e, 'o i le lagi  
'ia pa'ia lou suafa,  
'ia o'o mai lou mālō,  
'ia faia lou finagalo  
i le lalolagi,  
e pei ona faia i le lagi.  
'Ia 'e foa'i mai iā te 'i mātou i le aso nei  
a mātou mea e 'ai e tatau ma le aso,  
'Ia 'e fa'amāgalo iā te 'i mātou  
i ā mātou agasala<sup>1</sup>  
e pei ona mātou fo'i  
'ona mātou fa'amāgaloina atu  
i 'ē 'ua agaleaga mai iā te 'i mātou.  
'Aua fo'i 'e te ta'ita'ina 'i mātou  
i le fa'aosoosoga,  
'A 'ia 'e lavea'i iā 'i mātou 'ai le leaga.  
'Auā e ou le mālō,  
ma le mana, 'ātoa ma le vī'iga  
e fa'avavau lava.  
'Āmene.*

Our Father, who art in heaven  
hallowed be thy name,  
thy kingdom come,  
thy will be done  
on earth,  
as it is in heaven.  
Give us this day  
our daily bread,  
and forgive us  
our trespasses  
as we  
forgive  
those who trespass against us.  
Lead us not  
into temptation,  
but deliver us from evil.  
For thine is the kingdom,  
the power, and the glory  
forever and ever.  
Amen.

### 16.2 AN ADVERTISEMENT FOR FAMILY PLANNING

This advertisement, which was frequently published in Samoan newspapers in 1993 and 1994, is written without glottal stops and without the indication of vowel length. Use the vocabulary to fully understand each word. Our translation is not idiomatic English, but imitates the Samoan way of expression.

---

<sup>1</sup> ā possessive preposition, var. of a

*Ia fuafua lelei le faitaua o tagata  
ina ia talafeagai ma lou tamaoaiga.  
O le fuafuaina lelei o aiga  
o se auala aupito sili  
e te faailoa ai lou alofa i lau fanau,  
oe ma lou aiga.*

1. *Ia fuafua lelei pe toafia se fanau  
e tatau ona maua ina ia mafai  
ona oulua tausia lelei.*

2. *O le fuafuaina lelei,  
o le faavavaina lea o le fananau mai o  
tamaiti  
ina ia maua le tino maloloina  
ma se olaga manuia.*

3. *O le fuafuaina lelei,  
o se fesoasoani mo le tina  
mo le faaatoatoaina o ona totoga fanau  
mo se maitaga fou.*

*Asiasi ane loa i le Aiga Fuafuaina i  
Motootua  
po o soo se falemai i nuu i tua  
mo se fesoasoani mo oe.*

Plan well the number of people  
to match with your wealth.  
Good family planning  
is the very best way  
to show your love to your children, you and  
your family.

1. Plan well how many children  
you should have so that you can  
care well (for them).

2. Good planning  
is to space the children (lit. the being born of  
the children)  
so that they get a healthy body  
and a happy life.

3. Good planning is  
to help the mother  
to regain full strength of her reproductive  
system (lit. give the whole of her birth organs)  
for a new pregnancy.

Visit now the Family Planning in Motootua  
or any hospital in the villages in the outback  
for some help for you.

### 16.3 AN ADVERTISEMENT FOR HARDWARE

This advertisement contains a few, but not all, glottal stops.

*Manatua!  
E maua so'o se mea fau fale,  
e pei o fao i so'o se ituaiga,  
apa ato fale ma taualuga.  
Pa'u tele tau,  
e fetau lelei ma lou mana'o.  
Tala a'ao mai!  
E sili le va'ai, e malie ai!*

Remember!  
We have all sorts of building materials,  
such as nails of any kind,  
metal roofing sheets and roofs.  
The prices have really dropped,  
to really suit your needs.  
Come!  
It is best to have a look and be satisfied!

## 16.4 'O le tusi 'aisi 'A letter asking for help'

Mo Tino,

*faamolemole, pe mafai mai lava sau  
luasefulu tala sei faatau ai se apa susu  
a la'u tama.*

*E lei maua mai le totogi a lo'u toalua,  
sa tatau ona maua nei.*

*E toe totogi atu lava lau tupe,  
pe a maua mai le totogi a lou toalua.*

*Faamalie atu pe afai ua iai se le mafaufau o  
lenei tagata i lau susuga, le tamaitai pule o  
le falemai.*

*Ia manuia galuega o le aso.*

*O Fili.*

For Tino,

please, could you give me \$20 so that I  
could buy a tin of milk for my child.

My husband hasn't got his pay,  
which he should have by now.

I'll pay your money back,  
when my husband gets his pay.

Please accept my apologies if I have not  
approached you in the proper way, your  
honour the matron of the hospital (lit. ...if  
there was not thinking of this person to your  
honour...).

Have a nice day.

Fili.

## 16.5 'O le tusi fa'afetai 'A thank you letter'

Mo lau tofa, Moetoto,

*e muamua pea le faafetai i le Atua ona o  
lana tausiga alofa ia i tatou le fanau.<sup>2</sup>*

*Ua ou tusi atu ona e fia momoli atu  
la'u faafetai lē lava*

*ona o lou loto alofa ma lau amio tausaaafia*

*na fa'aalia i le taimi a o 'ou tafao i le tou nuu.*

*Ia alofa le Atua faatutumu mea ua to'esea  
ona o lou agalelei.*

*Faamagalo mai a'u pe afai ua iai so'u sese  
i le tā vā.*

*Momoli atu i le nuu lau faafetai faatauva.*

*Ia faamanuia le Atua ia te outou uma.*

*Tofa soifua,*

*Tina Edwards*

To the honourable talking chief, Moetoto,

first let us thank God for his loving care for  
us the children. (lit. The thanking...comes  
still first...)

I am writing now because I want to send you  
my insufficient thanks

because of your kind heart and your  
hospitality

you showed when I spent my holidays in  
your village.

May God in his love fully return what you  
have given away in your kindness.

Forgive me if I have done anything wrong in  
our relationship.

Give my humble thanks to the village.

God bless you all.

Good bye,

Tina Edwards

<sup>2</sup> ia i tatou [iā 'i tātou] for us; remember that the independent pronoun has a variant 'i tātou, cf. §6.1.

## 16.6 'O Sina ma lana tuna 'Sina and her eel'

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>O Sina o se teine e ese lona aulelei.</i>   | Sina was an extremely beautiful girl.   |
| 2. <i>O lana masani o le tā'ele'ele lea i se vai e lata ane i lona fale.</i>                              | She had the habit of bathing in a pool close to her house.                                  |
| 3. <i>I se tasi aso ao taele le teine i le vai,</i><br><br><i>sa vaai ai i se tama'i tuna 'o auau ai.</i> | One day, when the girl was bathing in the pool,<br><br>she saw a little eel swimming there. |
| 4. <i>Na manao ai loa e fai ma ana fagafao.</i>   | She wanted it as her pet.   |
| 5. <i>Na pu'e ma ave i lona fale e tausai ai.</i>   | She caught it and took it to her house to take care of it there.                            |
| 6. <i>E ese ma le fiafia o Sina i le tausiga o lana tamai tuna.</i>                                       | Sina was very happy to take care of her little eel.   |
| 7. <i>Na tea ni aso se tele ma ua vaai atu Sina ua faasolosolo ina telē tele lana fagafao.</i>            | Many days had passed and Sina saw that her pet was growing bigger.                          |
| 8. <i>Ua fefe ai tele le teine ma iu ai ina sola.</i>   | The girl became very frightened and finally ran away.                                       |
| 9. <i>Ua fiu Sina e sola ae mulimuli atu lava i ai le tuna.</i>   | Sina was tired of running away, but the eel kept following her.                             |
| 10. <i>Na faai'u ina sulu Sina i se tasi o fale o se isi nu'u.</i>  | Finally Sina took refuge in one of the houses of another village.                           |
| 11. <i>O le fale lea o la e fai ai le fono a matai o le nuu.</i>  | It was the house where the chiefs of the village were holding a meeting.                    |
| 12. <i>Na aioi Sina i matai mo se fesoasoani.</i>   | Sina asked the chiefs for help.   |
| 13. <i>Sa faatonu loa e matai taulele'a e tape le tuna.</i>   | The chiefs instructed the untitled men to kill the eel.                                     |
| 14. <i>Ua iloa e le tuna ua oo mai lona i'uga.</i>  | The eel realised that his end had come.   |
| 15. <i>O lea na tagi tautala ai loa le tuna ia Sina:</i>  | And so, the eel cried and spoke to Sina:  |
| 16. <i>"Sina, a ou mate, ave lo'u ulu e tanu i tafatafa o lou fale.</i>                                   | "Sina, when I die, take my head and bury it beside your house.                              |
| 16. <i>O le a tupu mai ai se laau e aoga tele mo oe.</i>  | A tree will grow from it which will be very useful for you.                                 |
| 17. <i>O le a e manatua ai a'u ma lo'u alofa iate oe."</i>  | You will remember me and my love for you."  |
| 18. <i>Sa usitai Sina i le manaoga o le tuna.</i>   | Sina obeyed the eel's wish.   |
| 19. <i>E sa'o lava si tuna.</i>   | The poor eel was right.   |
| 20. <i>E tele aoga o lenei laau.</i>  | This tree has many uses.  |
| 21. <i>E te iloa le igoa o le laau?</i>   | Do you know the name of the tree?   |
| 22. <i>O le niu.</i>  | The coconut tree.   |
| 23. <i>A e inu i se niu e te iloa lelei ai foliga o le tuna a Sina.</i>                                   | When you drink from a coconut, you will clearly recognise the face of Sina's eel.           |

## KEY TO THE EXERCISES

### 1.4 EXERCISE 2

1. New Zealand	Australia	Sydney	Auckland	China
2. continent	Labour Party	programme	university	club
3. report	ice-cream	computer	Queensland	overstayer
4. cupboard	loan	deliver	spoon	knife

### 1.4 EXERCISE 3

1. <i>leitiō</i>	<i>lakapī</i>	<i>'apalai</i>	<i>'amepeka</i>
2. <i>siamupini</i>	<i>komiti</i>	<i>'ōfisa</i>	<i>sitaili</i>
3. <i>kamupanī</i>	<i>Ianuari</i>	<i>Mati</i>	<i>nusipepa</i>
4. <i>telefoni</i>	<i>sifī</i>	<i>siaki</i>	<i>saienisi</i>

### 1.4 EXERCISE 4

1. <i>'O a'u 'o Kāvika.</i>	5. <i>Kulou.</i>
2. <i>Kālofa Mālia.</i>	6. <i>Kolu kālā.</i>
3. <i>Fa'afekai.</i>	7. <i>Maguia le Kilisimasi.</i>
4. <i>Kōfā Soifua.</i>	8. <i>Māgaia kele.</i>

### 2.6 EXERCISE 1

1. The girl danced in the house.	<i>Sā sisiva teine i le fale.</i>
2. The boy slept in the sitting room.	<i>Sā momoe tama i le potu mālōlō.</i>
3. The girl went to the post office.	<i>Sā ō teine i le falemeli.</i>
4. The boy walked to church.	<i>Sā sāvali tama i le lotu.</i>
5. The chief stayed at home.	<i>Sā nonofo matai i le fale.</i>



## 2.6 EXERCISE 5

1. 'O ai lou igoa? 'O lo'u igoa 'o Tāvita.
2. 'O ai lou tinā?
3. 'O lo'u tinā 'o Sina.
4. 'O ai lou tamā?
5. 'O lo'u tamā 'o Simi.
6. 'O lo'u tamā 'o se matai tāua.
7. 'O fea le nu'u o lou tinā?
8. 'O ai le igoa o le tinā o lou tinā?
9. 'O le igoa o le tinā o lo'u tinā 'o Makerita
10. 'O fea lou tinā?

## 3.6 EXERCISE 3

- |   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. 'O le fale o le ali'i.                 | The high chief's house.     |
| 2. 'O le to'alua o Simi.                  | Jimmy's spouse.             |
| 3. 'O le tinā o le faletua o le faife'au. | The pastor's wife's mother. |
| 4. 'O le fānau a Makerita.                | Margaret's children.        |
| 5. 'O le pepe a le teine.                 | The girl's baby.            |
| 6. 'O le tama a Sina.                     | Sina's child.               |
| 7. 'O le tusi a Seu.                      | Seu's letter.               |
| 8. 'O le 'ōfisa o Tāvita.                 | David's office.             |
| 9. 'O le tamā o le fafine.                | The woman's father.         |
| 10. 'O le tuagane o Sieni.                | Jane's brother.             |

## 3.6 EXERCISE 4

- |             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. sau      | Tavita came.                     |
| 2. momoe    | The children slept.              |
| 3. sāvavali | The girls walked on the road.    |
| 4. nofo     | The boy stayed at the house.     |
| 5. ō        | The women went to the market.    |
| 6. ō mai    | The boys came to the hospital.   |
| 7. savali   | The mother walked to the cinema. |
| 8. alu      | Simi went to the bank.           |
| 9. nonofo   | The children stayed at school.   |
| 10. siva    | The boy danced in Apia.          |

### 3.6 EXERCISE 5

1. 'O Feleti 'o le to'alua o Makerita.
2. 'O Iōsefa 'o le tama tama a Makerita.
3. 'O Iōsefa 'o le atali'i o Feleti.
4. 'O 'Elisapeta 'o le tama teine a Makerita.
5. 'O 'Elisapeta 'o le afafine o Feleti.
6. 'O 'Elisapeta 'o le tuafafine o Iōsefa.
7. 'O Iōsefa 'o le tuagane o 'Elisapeta.
8. 'O Fefiloi 'o le uso o 'Elisapeta.
9. 'O Fa'a'uma 'o le uso o Iōsefa.
10. 'O Pētelo 'o le tamā o Makerita.

### 3.6 EXERCISE 6

1. 'O fea le naifi a Seu?
2. 'O fea le fa'amalu o Pētelo?
3. 'O fea le 'ofu o Sina?
4. 'O fea le leitiō a Sina?
5. 'O fea le ta'avale a Feleti?
6. 'O fea le fale'olua o Makerita?
7. 'O fea le ā'oga a le nu'u?
8. 'O fea le fale o le fōma'i?

### 4.9 EXERCISE 4

1. 'O le pūlou pa'epa'e.
2. 'O le 'ofutino mūmū.
3. 'O le pea samasama.
4. 'O le fusipa'u 'ena'ena.
5. 'O le 'ofuvae lanumeamata.
6. 'O le tōgiga lanumoana.
7. 'O le fa'amau lanumoli.
8. 'O le mitiafu lanupīniki.
9. 'O le sikafu 'ena'ena mālosi.
10. 'O le kola lanumeamata vaivai.

## 4.9 EXERCISE 5

1. *E samasama le ta'avale.*
2. *E lanumoana le pasi.*
3. *E 'umī lava le 'ofu.*
4. *'Ua papapalā le tōgiga.*
5. *'Ua māsae le 'ofu.*
6. *'Ua palapalā lava le 'ofu.*
7. *E leaga le mea lea.*
8. *E lelei le mea'ai.*
9. *'Ua ma'i le teine.*
10. *'O lo'o ma'i ā le tama.*

## 4.9 EXERCISE 6

1. Is your father still working? No, he has finished work.
2. Is he sleeping? No, he has gone to the meeting.
3. When is he coming? In the night.
4. Where are the children? They are staying at the pastor's house.
5. Where is your mother? She is doing the cooking.

## 5.8 EXERCISE 4

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>'Ua ō teine i Apia.</i>                     | The girls have gone to Apia.             |
| 2. <i>Evāleleateine.</i>                          | The girls are stupid.                    |
| 3. <i>Leai, e popoto.</i>                         | No, they are clever.                     |
| 4. <i>Na sisiva fāfine i le fale komiti.</i>      | The women danced in the committee house. |
| 5. <i>'O fāfine lāpopo'a.</i>                     | The big women.                           |
| 6. <i>'O lo'o sāvavali taulele'a i le 'auala.</i> | The young men are walking on the road.   |
| 7. <i>'Ua pā'e'e'e, 'ua mama'i.</i>               | They are skinny, they are sick.          |
| 8. <i>'O lo'o mālolo si pea lo'omātutua.</i>      | The old women are still strong.          |

## 5.8 EXERCISE 6

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>E nofo le lo'omatua i le fale.</i>               | The old woman stays home.                            |
| 2. <i>E alu āfea le toea'ina i le fono?</i>            | When does the old man go to the meeting?             |
| 3. <i>E alu āfea le taule'ale'a i le togāfa'i?</i>     | When does the young man go to the banana plantation? |
| 4. <i>E siva āfea le tamaitiiti i le faleā'oga?</i>    | When does the child dance at school?                 |
| 5. <i>'O fea le tama? Lae nofo i totonu o le fale.</i> | Where is the boy? He is sitting in the house.        |

- |  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| 6. <i>Sau e fai le kuka.</i>             | Come and do the cooking. |
| 7. <i>'Aumai se naifi.</i>               | Bring a knife.           |
| 8. <i>Tipi fa'amānifinifi le aniani.</i> | Cut the onion thinly.    |
| 9. <i>Tipi le lā'au.</i>                 | Cut the tree.            |
| 10. <i>'O fea le ipu māfolafola?</i>     | Where is the plate?      |

#### 6.9 EXERCISE 6

1. *'O mā'ua e uso. 'O mātou e uso.*
2. *'O lā'ua e uso. 'O lātou e uso.*
3. *'O le meaalofo lea mai iā lātou.*
4. *'O le meaalofo lea mo 'oe, 'oulua, 'outou.*
5. *E 'ino'ino le tama iate a'u, iā tā'ua, iā tātou.*
6. *E ita le faia'oga iate 'oe, iā 'oulua, iā 'outou.*
7. *'O fea e sau ai le fōma'i?*
8. *E sau mai Saina.*
9. *'O lae fa'atali i lona to'alua ma lana fānau mai Niu Sila.*
10. *E fiafia tele le fōma'i i le lu'au.*

#### 6.9 EXERCISE 7

- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| 1. <i>mai</i> | Go and buy some sugar.                   |
| 2. <i>mai</i> | The teacher will be late to the meeting. |
| 3. <i>atu</i> | Wait at the house.                       |
| 4. <i>atu</i> | Tell the doctor that Jimmy is sick.      |
| 5. <i>atu</i> | Chase the cat outside, please.           |
| 6. <i>atu</i> | Go and sell this radio to Sina.          |
| 7. <i>mai</i> | Wait for John.                           |
| 8. <i>mai</i> | The pastor said there is no service.     |

#### 7.11 EXERCISE 9

1. Are you going to church?
2. No, I am sick.
3. What is the sickness?
4. I have a headache.
5. Do you want to eat? Are you hungry?
6. No thank you. I don't want (to eat) anything.
7. Do you have any tablets, please?

## 8.7 EXERCISE 7

1. *Na fia alu le tinā i le fono a mātua.*
2. *Na mana'o i le 'ofu lanu mūmū.*
3. *'O le fale o le faife'au e fai ai le fono.*
4. *Na mana'o Tina i se suka.*
5. *'O le fono a mātua.*

## 8.7 EXERCISE 9

Hello. My name is Jimmy. I am an Australian. I work at the Australian High Commission. I live at Moamoa. I have no spouse. My family all live in Australia. I have an aunt in New Zealand. I have three brothers and one sister.

## 9.6 EXERCISE 8

1. *'Ou te sau mai 'Amerika.*
2. *Sā 'ou ma'i.*
3. *'E te lelei.*
4. *Na 'e alu i le fono.*
5. *Na 'e pepelo iā Mālia.*
6. *Lua te nonofo i le faletalimālō.*
7. *'Ua mā fia momoe.*
8. *Sā tā tā'e'ele i le sami.*
9. *Sā lua pepese i le tivī.*
10. *Na tou moaina le vao.*

## 10.8 EXERCISE 5

- |                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>sefuluono</i>     | 6. <i>sefulutasi</i>     |
| 2. <i>sefuluiva</i>     | 7. <i>fitusefuluiva</i>  |
| 3. <i>tolusefulufā</i>  | 8. <i>fāsefuluvalu</i>   |
| 4. <i>fāsefulutolu</i>  | 9. <i>limasefuluiva</i>  |
| 5. <i>limasefululua</i> | 10. <i>ivasefululima</i> |

## 10.8 EXERCISE 7

- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| 1. 9      | 6. 45      |
| 2. 12     | 7. 105     |
| 3. 31     | 8. 673     |
| 4. 83     | 9. 9,720   |
| 5. 10,000 | 10. 21,139 |

## 10.8 EXERCISE 8

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>E to'afia ou uso?</i><br><i>E to'afia ou tuafāfine?</i>                     | (when asking either a girl or a boy)<br>(when asking a boy) |
| 2. <i>E to'aono o'u uso.</i><br><i>E to'aono o'u tuafāfine.</i>                   | (said by a girl or a boy)<br>(said by a boy)                |
| 3. <i>E iai sou uso?</i><br><i>E iai sou tuagane?</i>                             | (asking a boy)<br>(asking a girl)                           |
| 4. <i>E to'alua o'u uso.</i><br><i>E to'alua o'u tuagane.</i>                     | (said by a girl or a boy)<br>(said by a girl)               |
| 5. <i>'O le ā le mātutua o ou uso?</i><br><i>'O le ā le mātutua o ou tuagane?</i> |   |
| 6. <i>E sefuluono le isi le 'ae sefululua le isi.</i>                             |   |
| 7. <i>'O le ā le mātutua o ou mātua?</i>  |   |
| 8. <i>'O lo'u tinā 'ua fāsefuluono.</i>   |   |
| 9. <i>'O lo'u tamā 'ua limasefulu.</i>  |   |

## 10.8 EXERCISE 9

- |                |                      |
|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>le</i>   | 5. <i>ōmai/va'ai</i> |
| 2. <i>la'u</i> | 6. <i>le</i>         |
| 3. <i>ai</i>   | 7. <i>Aso Sā</i>     |
| 4. <i>e</i>    | 8. <i>faigaluega</i> |

## 11.11 EXERCISE 2

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Na 'ou sau ananafi.</i>                         | I came yesterday.  |
| 2. <i>Na 'ou alu i le fono anataeao.</i>              | I went to the meeting this morning.                      |
| 3. <i>Na mā ō mai mai 'Amerika tala atu ananafi.</i>  | We (du.exc.) came from America the day before yesterday. |
| 4. <i>Na mātou momoe i le faletalimālō anapō.</i>     | We slept at the hotel last night.                        |
| 5. <i>Na alu Simi i tuā i le vāiaso lea 'ua te'a.</i> | Simi went to the back village last week.                 |
| 6. <i>'Ou te alu i Niu Sila taeao.</i>                | I am going to New Zealand tomorrow.                      |
| 7. <i>E toe 'āmata ā'oga i le vāiaso lea.</i>         | Schools start again next week.                           |
| 8. <i>'O le Lotu Tamaiti le māsina lea.</i>           | White Sunday is next month.                              |
| 9. <i>E fai le mātou siva nānei.</i>                  | Our dance is tonight.                                    |
| 10. <i>'O le galuega a le faife'au le afiafi.</i>     | The pastor's working bee is in the afternoon.            |

## 11.11 EXERCISE 3

1. 'O 'oe 'o le teine.
2. E to'alua ou tuagane.
3. E nofo i le fale ma fai le mea'ai.
4. 'Ua tolu tausaga.
5. 'E te fiafia i le ā'oga.

## 11.11 EXERCISE 8

1. 'O le ā le taimi 'e te alu ai i le galuega?
2. E pu'e le pasi i le ono.
3. 'O le ā le taimi e 'āmata ai lau galuega?
4. Mātou te 'āmata i le valu.
5. E fia itūlā 'e te faigaluega ai i le aso?
6. E valu itūlā.

## 12.9 EXERCISE 7

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. Fa'amolemole. | 6. Fa'amolemole. |
| 2. Manuia.       | 7. Fa'afetai.    |
| 3. Mālō.         | 8. Mālō.         |
| 4. Manuia.       | 9. Mālō.         |
| 5. Mālō.         | 10. Manuia.      |

## 13.6 EXERCISE 1

1. David leaves soon.
2. David left a long time ago.
3. David left late.
4. David should go.
5. David left early.
6. The poor old man used to come.
7. It is easy to buy a house.
8. It is hard to get a job.
9. The work has started.
10. The food is already made.

13.6 EXERCISE 7

1. *'Ua fo'i mai savaliga a teine.*
2. *'Ua fo'i mai le fa'atauga a le fafine.*
3. *Na alu le aso 'ātoa 'o su'i e Taealofa lou 'ofu.*
4. *E 'ese lo'u fiafia 'i le 'ofu fou.*
5. *Na 'e va'ai i lo'u 'ofu fou.*
6. *Na 'ou fa'atali i 'inei ia te 'oe mo le lua itulā.*
7. *'Ua 'ou ita ia te 'oe?*
8. *'Aiseā 'ua 'e ita ai ia te a'u?*
9. *'E te tali so'o mai lava!*
10. *'O le ā le taimi sā tataua ona 'ou sau ai?*
11. *Na fai a'u meaā'oga. 'A pasi la'u su'ega, 'o le 'ā maua la'u sikolasipi.*
12. *E fai e Tina le mea'ai, 'a 'o Mose e faiga le umu.*

14.8 EXERCISE 6

1. *E le'i tatalaina le fale'olua.*
2. *E le'i 'āmataina le lotu.*
3. *E le'i sau le minisitā.*
4. *E le'i taunu'u le pāsese.*
5. *E le'i 'aina la'u fasi falaoa.*
6. *E le'i moaina le vao.*
7. *E le'i sasaina le vao.*
8. *E le'i mū le fale o Simi.*
9. *E le'i lokaina le falesā.*
10. *E le'i ma'i lo'u tamā.*

14.8 EXERCISE 10

1. *E fa'afia ona 'e vili mai i lo'u 'ōfisa?*
2. *Masalo pē fa'atolu pē fa'afā.*
3. *'Aua le vili so'o mai.*
4. *Taumafai e vili mai i le afiafi.*
5. *'O le ā le nūmera i le fale? Lua fā fitu tolu tolu.*
6. *Na alu le gaoi i le fale o le faife'au.*
7. *'O ai na faia?*
8. *'Ou te lē iloaina. E le'i lelei ona loka le fale.*
9. *Na vili leoleo?*
10. *E leai. E le'i ola le telefoni.*



## 15.8 EXERCISE 5

1. After church we will go to Margaret's house.
2. We will go when the bus comes.
3. I'll do my homework first before I sleep.
4. We will eat after hanging the washing.
5. We will buy the sugar when the shop is opened.
6. Don't go until I come.
7. Don't make any noise while we have the service.
8. Don't come until I ring.
9. Don't sleep until I come.
10. Don't walk until the car arrives.

## 15.8 EXERCISE 6

1. Because of the rain, you cannot go.
2. *'Ona e leai so'u pasese e lē mafai ai ona 'ou alu.*  
Because I don't have a fare, I cannot go.
3. *'Ona e tīgā lo'u nifo, e lē mafai ai ona 'ou 'ai.*  
Because my tooth hurts, I cannot eat.
4. *'Ona 'e te ma'i, e lē mafai ai ona 'e ta'alo.*  
Because you are sick, you cannot play.
5. *'Ona 'ou te matafefe, e lē mafai ai ona 'ou moe.*  
Because I am scared, I cannot sleep.
6. *'Ona 'ua gau le kī, lē mafai ai ona tatata le faitoto'a.*  
Because the key broke, the door cannot be opened.
7. *'Ona 'o le pisa, e lē mafai ai ona fai a'u mea ā'oga.*  
Because of the noise, I cannot do my homework.
8. *'Ona 'ua pogisā, e lē mafai ai ona tātou sāvavali.*  
Because it is dark, we cannot walk.
9. *'Ona 'ua pē le paipa, e lē mafai ai ona tā'e'ele.*  
Because the tap is not working, we cannot have a shower.
10. *'Ona 'o le pa'ō, e lē mafai ai ona maua sa'u moe.*  
Because of the noise, I cannot get any sleep.

## 15.8 EXERCISE 8

1. *'Aiseā na 'e lē sau ai i ta'alogā lakapī?*
2. *E le'i mafai ona 'ou sau 'ona sā iai a'u mālō.*
3. *'Aisea na 'e lē vili mai ai?*
4. *Na 'ou vili mai 'ae leai se isi na talia le telefoni.*

5.    *'O āfea 'e te alu ai i Niu Sila?*
6.    *'A maua le tupe o lo'u pāsese, 'ou te alu 'ae le'i o'o i le Kilisimasi.*
7.    *'Ana iai nisi a'u tupe, 'ou te totōgia lou pāsese.*
8.    *Vili mai pē 'ā 'e maua se tala.*
9.    *E mafai ona 'e vili mai i le fale pē 'ā te'a le valu.*
10.    *'Ou te lē i le fale 'ae le'i tāina le valu.*

## SAMOAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

### A

**a** prep., of (3.1).

**ā**<sup>1</sup> interr., what (2.3).

**ā**<sup>2</sup> part., softening questions and answers (4.5).

**'ā** TAM, short form of *'ole'ā* (4.6).

**'a'aosolo** v.i., move the hands while weaving a mat (12.5).

**'ae** conj., but (7.8).

**afā** n., hurricane (15.6).

**'afa** n., half (11.6).

**afafine** n., daughter of a man (3.1).

**'āfai** conj., if, when (15.2).

**āfāina** v.i., be something the matter with.  
**e lē āfāina** it does not matter (14.6).

**afe**<sup>1</sup> num., thousand (6.6).

**afe**<sup>2</sup> v.i., turn (11.4).

**āfea** interr., when (4.3, 7.5, 11.7).

**afi** n., fire (5.6).

**afiafi** n., afternoon (11.5).

**afio mai** v.i., u.f., be welcomed (3.4).

**afioga** n., u.f., the honourable high chief (3.3).

**afitusi** n., match (5.8).

**afu** n., sweat (5.8).

**agaleaga** v.i., behave badly, be cruel (16.1).

**agalelei** v.i., be kind. n., kindness (11.5).

**agavale** n., left (11.4).

**ai**<sup>1</sup> anaphoric pronoun (7.5).

**ai**<sup>2</sup> interr., who (2.3).

**'ai**<sup>1</sup> 1. v.i. (pl. *'a'ai*), eat (5.3). 2. v.t., eat (14.4).

**'ai**<sup>2</sup> adv., maybe (13.5).

**'ai**<sup>3</sup> prep., from (16.1).

**'aia** > *'ai* 1 (14.4).

**'āiga** n., family (5.3).

**'aiina** > *'ai* 1 (14.4).

**'ailoga** adv., I doubt, I don't think so (9.5).

**'ai'oi** v.i., implore, beg (16.6).

**'aisakulimi** n., ice-cream (1.4).

**'aiseā** interr., why (7.7, 15.1).

**'aisiga** n., begging, asking for s.th. (15.6)

**'aisikulimi** n., ice-cream.

**'aitālafu** n., debt, account (14.4).

**aitu** n., ghost, spirit (10.4, 15.4).

**ala** v.i. (pl. *feala*), wake up, be awake (13.7).

**alaisa** n., rice (7.10).

**ali'i** n., high chief, gentleman, Sir (2.5).

**alofa** 1 v.i. (pl. *alolofa*), love (6.4), 2. n., love (3.1).

**alofagia** v.t., care for s.o. with love (14.2).

**alu** v.i. (pl. *ō*), go (2.1).

**'aluga** n., pillow (5.8).

**'āmata** v.t., start, begin (4.4., 12.1).

**'āmene** amen (16.1).

**amio** n., behaviour (6.4).

**ana** poss.pron., his, her, its (8.1).

**'ana** conj., if (15.2).

**anafea** interr., when (7.5).

- analeilā** t.n., earlier today (11.5).  
**ananafi** t.n., yesterday (7.2).  
**ananei** t.n., earlier today (11.5).  
**anapō** t.n., last night (7.1).  
**anataeao** t.n., earlier this morning (11.5).  
**ane** dir., along (16.2).  
**aniani** n., onion (9.6). **aniani Saina** n., garlic (5.6).  
**ao** <sup>1</sup> v.i., must, should, be appropriate (12.1).  
**ao** <sup>2</sup> n., day, daylight (1.1).  
**'a'o** conj., but (7.4).  
**aoauli** n., noon, midday (1.1).  
**aofa'i** n., sum (10.5).  
**aogā** v.i., (be) useful (16.6).  
**ā'oga** 1. n., school (4.9). 2. v.i., go to school (15.1).  
**'apa** n., tin (7.10).  
**'apalai** v.i., apply (1.4).  
**Aperila** n., April (6.3).  
**'api** n., exercise book (8.7). **'api faitusi** n., writing pad (8.7).  
**'apu** n., apple (7.10).  
**asiasi** v.t., visit (16.2).  
**asikulimi** n., ice-cream.  
**aso** n., day (5.2). **aso fānau** n., birthday (9.4). **Aso Faraile** n., Friday (6.3). **Aso Gafua** n., Monday (6.3). **Aso Lua** n., Tuesday (6.3). **Aso Lulu** n., Wednesday (6.3). **Aso Sā** n., Sunday (6.3). **Aso Tofi** n., Thursday (6.3). **Aso To'ona'i** n., Saturday (6.3).  
**asō** n., today (11.5).  
**ata** n., picture (6.4).  
**'ata** v.i., laugh (14.8).  
**atali'i** v.i., be more, increase (3.1).  
**atigi** n., 1. shell. 2. empty (container).  
**atigi fagu** n., empty bottle. **atigi fuāmoa** n., eggshell. **atigi lima** n., fingernail (8.6). **atigi pusa** n., box.  
**atigi vae** n., toenail (8.6).  
**ātili** v.i., be more, increase (15.7).  
**ato** n., thatch, roofing (16.3).  
**'ato** n., basket (5.4). **'ato 'asoa** n., handbag (13.6). **'ato pa'u** n., suitcase (13.1). **'ato ta'ita'i** n., briefcase (13.6). **'ato tu'utupe** n., purse, wallet (13.6).  
**'ātoa** v.i., (be) whole, complete (5.3, 10.3).  
**atu** dir., towards you, away from the place I am talking about now (6.6).  
**Atua** n., God (3.1).  
**atunu'u** n., country (12.5).  
**au** poss.pron., your (8.1).  
**a'u** <sup>1</sup> pron., I, me (5.2).  
**a'u** <sup>2</sup> poss.pron., my (8.1).  
**'au** n., group, team (1.1). **'au malaga** n., group of visitors, party of travellers (15.8). **'au vala'aulia** n., guests (6.5).  
**'aua** v., don't (7.9, 14.5).  
**'auā** conj., because (12.8, 15.1).  
**'au'au** v.i., u.f., bathe, have a shower (3.2).  
**'auala** n., road (4.7).  
**'Aukilani** n., Auckland.  
**'Aukuso** n., August (6.3).  
**aulelei** v.i., beautiful (16.6).  
**'āuli** v.t., iron (4.8).  
**aulia** v.i., reach (10.3).  
**'aumai** v.t., bring, give (5.1).  
**aupito sili** v.i., (be) best (16.2).  
**'Ausetālia** n., Australia.  
**'autafa** l.n., side (5.4).  
**'auvae** n., chin (8.7).  
**āvā** n., wife (3.1).  
**'ava** <sup>1</sup> n., beard (8.6).  
**'ava** <sup>2</sup> n., kava (12.9).  
**avanoa** n., space, opportunity (13.7).  
**'avatu** v.t., take away (15.7).

- 'ave<sup>1</sup> v.t., take (6.2).  
 'ave<sup>2</sup> v.t., drive. 'ave pasi 1. v.i.,  
 drive a bus. 2. n., bus driver (9.6).  
 'ave ta'avale 1. v.i., drive a car.  
 2. n., driver (9.6).  
 'āvoka n., avocado (10.8).

## E

- e<sup>1</sup> TAM, (4.3).  
 e<sup>2</sup> prep., indicating the doer of a  
 transitive action (13.1).  
 e<sup>3</sup> part., following nouns used as a form  
 of address (7.10).  
 e<sup>4</sup> pron., var. of 'e you (sg.).  
 'ē rel.pron., those who (16.1).  
 'e pron., you (sg.) (7.1).  
 'ea n., air (14.7).  
 'e'ē v.i., scream (12.2).  
 'ei interj., hey (3.5).  
 'ekālēsia n., church (the institution).  
 'ele'ele n., earth, soil (4.8).  
 'ele'elea v.i., (be) dirty (4.8).  
 'ēleni n., herrings (7.10).  
 'eletise n., electricity.  
 'ena'ena v.i., ('e'ena), (be) brown (4.9,  
 5.3).  
 'ese 1. v.i., (be) extreme, extraordinary  
 (12.2). 2. adv., away, off (5.6).  
 esi n., pawpaw (9.6).  
 eva v.i., go for a stroll (13.7).  
 ēvaga n., stroll (13.6).

## F

- fā num., four (10.1).  
 fā bye! (1.3).  
 fa'aaloalo v.i., be respectful (12.6).  
 fa'aaliga n., procession (13.6).  
 fa'aaogā v.t., use (5.2, 14.6).

- fa'a'ato'atoa v.t., give the whole of  
 s.th. (16.2).  
 fa'aatunu'u adj., national (14.1).  
 fa'ae'e v.i., go aboard, depart (7.10).  
 fa'aeteete v.i., be careful (9.6).  
 fa'afāfine n., man who behaves like a  
 woman (14.1).  
 fa'afanua n., map (14.1).  
 fa'afeagaiga n., u.f., pastor (3.2).  
 fa'afefea interr., how (12.8).  
 fa'afetai thank you (1.3).  
 fa'afia interr., how many times (14.3).  
 fa'afou v.t., make new, repair (14.1).  
 fa'agata n., vaccine (14.1).  
 fa'ailoa v.t., let know, show (16.2).  
 fa'ailoga n., stamp (13.6).  
 fa'a'inisinia adj., engineering (13.6).  
 fa'aipoipoga n., wedding (11.11).  
 fa'ai'u v.t., end, terminate. fa'ai'u ona  
 finally (16.6).  
 fa'alavelave n., problem, accident  
 (9.5), family affairs like funerals or  
 weddings (15.7).  
 fa'aleaga v.t., make bad, destroy, spoil  
 (14.1).  
 fa'alēmū v.t., slow down (11.4).  
 fa'aletausaga adj., annual (14.1).  
 fa'aali v.t., show (13.6).  
 fa'aaliga n., display, exhibition (13.6).  
 fa'alifu n., dish prepared with coconut  
 cream (6.9). fa'alifu fa'i n., banana  
 with coconut cream (5.7). fa'alifu  
 talo n., taro with coconut cream (6.9).  
 fa'alogo v.i., hear (6.4).  
 fa'alua v.i., twice (14.3).  
 fa'amāgalo v.t., forgive (16.1).  
 fa'amalama n., window (2.4).  
 fa'amalie v.t., satisfy, soothe, placate  
 (16.4).  
 fa'amālō interj., congratulations! well  
 done! (12.5).

**fa'amālosi** 1. v.i. (pl. *fa'amālolosi*), keep going, force o.s. (9.6). 2. v.t., force s.o.  
**fa'amalu** n., umbrella (3.1).  
**fa'amalū** n., mattress (5.8).  
**fa'amālū** v.i., u.f., bathe, have a shower (3.2).  
**fa'amanatu** v.t., remind (make think) (11.10).  
**fa'amanatuina** n., anniversary (15.8).  
**fa'amānifinifi** v.t., make thin (5.3).  
**fa'amanuia** v.t., bless (16.5).  
**fa'amāoni** v.i., (be) truthful, honest (6.9).  
**fa'amāsima** v.t., salt (5.6).  
**fa'amasino** n., judge (14.2).  
**fa'amasinoga** n., court hearing (4.9).  
**fa'amatala** v.i., explain (8.7).  
**fa'amatalaga** n., explanation (8.7).  
**fa'amau** 1. v.t., fasten. 2. n., button (4.9).  
**fa'amāvae** v.i., leave, resign (15.5).  
**fa'amoe** v.t., put to sleep (14.1).  
**fa'amolemole** please (1.3).  
**fa'amuli** v.i., stay behind (1.3).  
**fa'anini'i** v.t., make very small (5.6).  
**fa'anoi** v.i., ask for permission (12.9).  
**fa'ano'uno'u** 1. v.i., bend down. 2. v.t., bend s.th. (10.4).  
**fa'aola** v.t., 1. save s.o.'s life. 2. start (a fire or an engine) (5.6).  
**fa'aosooso** v.t., tempt.  
**fa'aosoosoga** n., temptation (16.1).  
**fa'apata** v.t., butter (14.1).  
**fa'apea** v.i., (be) like this.  
**fa'apēfea** v.i., interr., (be) how? (1.3).  
**fa'apēnā** v.i., (be) like that (1.3).  
**fa'apēnei** v.i., (be) like this (12.4).  
**fa'apuna** v.t., boil (5.6).  
**fa'asā** v.t., forbid (14.6).  
**fa'asa'o** v.t., straighten (10.4).

**fa'asolosolo** v.i., proceed.  
**fa'asolosolo ina** become, get more and more (16.6).  
**fa'asuka** v.t., sweeten with sugar (14.1).  
**fa'asusu** v.t., 1. let s.o. drink, breastfeed (15.4). 2. add. milk (5.6).  
**fā'ata** n., mirror (5.8).  
**fa'ata'ita'iga** n., rehearsal (15.8).  
**fa'atali** 1. v.i., wait, expect (6.6). 2. v.t., wait for (13.3).  
**fa'atālofa** v.i., greet (12.9).  
**fa'atasi** adv., together (12.9).  
**fa'atau** v.t., trade, sell, buy (6.6).  
**fa'ataua** > *fa'atau* (14.4).  
**fa'atauga** n., shopping (11.4).  
**fa'atauva'a** v.i., (be) humble (16.5).  
**fa'ati'eti'e** v.t., place, make sit (5.6).  
**fa'ato'ā** adv., just, a very short time ago (15.6).  
**fa'ato'aga** n., plantation (5.3).  
**fa'atonu** v.t., instruct (16.6).  
**fa'atū** v.t., stop (make stand) (11.4).  
**fa'atumu** v.t. (pl. *fa'atutumu*), fill (16.5).  
**fa'auli** v.t., drive (12.5).  
**fa'aulufalega** n., official opening (of a building) (15.8).  
**fa'a'upuga** n., phrase, expression (14.8) > *'upu*.  
**fa'avai** v.t., put into the water (5.6).  
**fa'avāvā** v.t., space, leave intervals between (16.2).  
**fa'avavau** v.i., (be) eternal, forever (16.1).  
**fa'avave** 1. v.t., hurry (14.1). 2. v.i., (be) urgent (14.6).  
**fafaga** v.t., feed (15.8).  
**fafano** v.t., wash (hands) (8.6).  
**fafine** n., woman (2.6).  
**fafo** l.n., outside (2.2, 5.4).  
**fagafao** n., pet (16.6).

**fāgota** v.i. (pl. *fāgogota*), go fishing (6.9).

**fagu** n., bottle (7.10).

**fai** <sup>1</sup> v.i., say (6.6).

**fai** <sup>2</sup> v.t., do, make (8.3). **fai 'āiga** v.i., marry (10.5). **fai le fono** hold a meeting (8.3). **fai le lotu** say grace. **fai le 'ofu** get dressed.

**fa'i** n., banana (5.6). **fa'ipula** n., ripe banana (9.6).

**faia** > **fai** <sup>2</sup> (14.4).

**faia'ia** hurry up (5.7).

**faia'oga** n., teacher (2.6).

**faifa'atō'aga** n., farmer (2.6).

**faifaiaga** v.i., (be) late, take too long to do something (13.7).

**faifaiva** n., fisherman (2.6).

**faife'au** n., pastor (2.6).

**faiga** 1. n., doing, making (13.3).  
2. long form of **fai** v.t.

**faigaluega** v.i., work (5.1).

**faigatā** v.i., (be) difficult (12.1).

**faigāuō** n., friendship (7.9) > *uō*.

**faigōfie** v.i., (be) easy (12.1).

**faila** n., file (14.8).

**failautusi** n., secretary (3.1).

**faima'umaga** n., taro planter (5.8).

**faimea'ai** v.i., prepare food (9.6).

**faipaipa** n., plumber (2.6).

**faitala** v.i., gossip (14.8).

**faitau** v.t., count (16.2).

**faitioga** n., complaint (8.7).

**faitoto'a** n., door (2.4).

**fala** <sup>1</sup> n., mat (5.8).

**fala** <sup>2</sup> n., pineapple (10.8).

**falai** v.t., fry (7.11).

**falaoa** n., bread (5.8).

**falaoamata** n., flour (7.11).

**fale** n., house (2.2). **fale'aiga** n., restaurant (2.6). **faleā'oga** n., school building (2.6). **fale'ese** n., toilet

(2.6). **falefalaoa** n., bakery (5.8).

**Fale Fono** n., Parliament House

(7.11). **falegāosimea** n., factory

(5.8). **fale'inisinia** n., mechanic

house (5.8). **fale kalapu** n.,

nightclub (12.9). **falekomiti** n.,

committee house (2.6). **falelauasiga**

n., u.f., funeral (11.11). **falema'i** n.,

hospital (2.6). **falemeli** n., post office

(2.3). **fale'olooa** n., shop (2.6).

**falepuipui** n., jail (2.6). **falesā** n.,

church (building) (2.6). **faleta'avale**

n., garage (7.11). **faletalimālō** n.,

hotel (7.7). **faletifaga** n., cinema

(3.6). **faletupe** n., bank (2.6).

**faletusi** n., library (7.10). **faleuila**

n., toilet (2.4).

**faletua** n., wife of a pastor or a high chief (3.1).

**fānau** 1. v.i. (pl. *fānanau*), (be) born. 2.

v.t., give birth to. 3. n., birth (9.4).

4. n., children (3.1).

**fānua** n., property of land (8.7).

**fao** n., nail (16.3).

**fasi** <sup>1</sup> v.t., hit (15.1).

**fasi** <sup>2</sup> n., (only in combination with other nouns) piece (7.3). **fasi māmoe** n., mutton flaps (5.6). **fasi moli** n., soap (10.8). **fasi povi** n., beef (5.6).

**fatatusi** n., bookshelf (5.8).

**fatafata** n., chest (8.7).

**fau** v.t., build (15.6).

**fautuaga** n., advice (8.7).

**fea** interr., where (1.3, 3.5).

**fealofani** v.i., respect one another (9.6)  
> *alofa*.

**fealua'i** v.i. (pl. *feoa'i*), go around, drive (12.4) > *alu*.

**fe'au** n., message; duty, something you have to do for someone else (6.6).

**fefe** 1. v.i. (pl. *fefefe*), fear, be scared of (6.4), 2. n., fear (3.1).

**feiloa'i** v.i., see each other, meet (1.3) > *iloa*.

**felea** v.i., (be) flared (4.8).  
**feoloolo** v.i., be fairly good, not too bad (7.7).  
**Fepuari** n., February (6.3).  
**fesili** v.i., ask (7.5).  
**fesiligia** v.t., question, interrogate (14.2).  
**fesoasoani** 1. v.i., help. 2. n., help (8.7).  
**fetalaiga** n., u.f., talking chief (3.2).  
**fetaui ma** v.i., meet with, suit (16.3).  
**fia** <sup>1</sup> adv., want (5.2, 7.3). **fia 'ai** be hungry (lit. want to eat). **fia ola!** help! (lit. want to live) (7.3). **fia poto** (be) arrogant (12.2).  
**fia** <sup>2</sup> interr., how many? (10.1).  
**fiafia** v.i., like, be happy (with) (12.2).  
**fili** v.t., plait (8.6).  
**filo** n., thread (5.8).  
**finagalo** v.i., u.f., want, desire (8.7, 15.7).  
**fisi** v.t., peel (with a knife) (5.6),  
**fitu** num., seven (10.1).  
**fiu** v.i., be fed up (with), tired of (6.4).  
**fiva** n., fever.  
**fōa'i** v.t., u.f., give, make a present of (16.1).  
**fofō** v.t., massage (8.7).  
**fofo'e** v.t., peel with the hand or a peeler (5.6).  
**fogi** v.t., blow (nose) (8.6).  
**fo'i** <sup>1</sup> v.i., come back, return (10.4, 12.6).  
**fo'i** <sup>2</sup> adv., also, again, too (10.6).  
**folā** n., floor (2.4).  
**fōliga** n.pl., features, face (16.6).  
**fōma'i** n., doctor (2.6). **fōma'i nifo** n., dentist (9.5).  
**fono** n., meeting (4.9).  
**fōnō** v.t., call (1.4).  
**fou** v.i., (be) new (4.7).  
**fua** v.i., bear fruit (9.4).

**fuafua** v.t., plan (16.2).  
**fuālā'au** n., 1. vegetables (5.3). 2. pill, tablet.  
**fuāmoa** n., egg (7.11).  
**fufulu** v.t., wash (2.4). **fufulunifo** v.i., brush the teeth (10.8).  
**fugālā'au** n., flower.  
**fulu** v.t., wash, clean (1.1).  
**fulū** n., influenza, cold (1.1).  
**fulufulu** n., body hair.  
**fusi** v.t., bind, lash (4.9).  
**fusipa'u** n., belt (4.9).

## G

**gāfea** interr., where about? (12.7).  
**galo** v.i., forget, be forgotten (15.1, 15.8).  
**gālue** v.i. (pl. *gālulue*) work (5.3).  
**galuega** n., work (2.6).  
**gaoi** 1. v., steal (14.8). 2. n., thief (5.8).  
**gasegase** v.i., u.f., (be) sick.  
**gāsese** v.t., u.f., prepare food (12.5).  
**gata** n., snake (1.1).  
**gau** v.i., break (15.8).  
**gugutu** v.i., make up stories (14.8).  
**gutu** n., mouth (1.1, 4.9).  
**gutuoso** v.i., talk back (13.7).

## H

**Haikomesina** n., High Commissioner (1.1).  
**Haikomisi** n., High Commission (1.1).

## I

**i**, 'i prep., in, at, to, into (2.2).  
**'i** <sup>1</sup> interj., yes (1.3).



'ī<sup>2</sup> l.n., here (2.2, 7.9).  
 ia<sup>1</sup> pron., he, him, she, her, it (6.1).  
 ia<sup>2</sup> dem.pl., these (11.2).  
 iā, 'iā prep., var. of *i*, 'i, used with  
 pronouns and proper names (6.2).  
 'ia TAM, (9.3, 9.4).  
 i'a n., fish (10.4).  
 iai v.i., exist, there is (5.1).  
 Ianuari n., January (6.3).  
 Iāpani n., Japan, Japanese (6.9).  
 'iata n., yard (10.7).  
 iate, 'iate prep., var. of *i*, 'i used with  
 pronouns (5.2, 6.2).  
 Ie dem., pl. of *lele*, those (11.2).  
 'ie n., cloth, material, sarong (4.9). 'ie  
 'afu n., bed sheet (5.8). 'ie pupuni  
 n., curtain (10.7).  
 ifo dir., down (13.5).  
 igoa n., name (2.3).  
 'ile l.n., there a few meters away (11.3).  
 iloa v.t., know (4.8, 8.7), recognise, see  
 (12.1).  
 'ina 'ia conj. + TAM, in order to (15.4).  
 'ina ne'i conj. + TAM, so that not  
 (15.4).  
 'ina 'ua conj. + TAM, when (15.4).  
 'inei l.n., here (7.7).  
 'inisinia n., engineer (2.6).  
 'ino'ino v.i., hate, dislike (6.4).  
 inu 1. v.i. (pl. *feinu*), drink. 2. n., drink.  
 'ioe yes (1.3).  
 ipu n., cup, glass, dish (2.4). ipu  
 māfolafola n., plate (5.8). ipu  
 mālamalama n., glass.  
 'isalā'elu n., eggplant (10.8).  
 'isarā'elu n., eggplant (10.8).  
 isi 1. n., someone, somebody, anybody.  
 2. det., other (5.2).  
 isu n., nose (4.9).  
 'isumu n., mouse, rat (14.4).  
 ita v.i. (pl. *feita*), (be) angry (6.4).

'ita pron., I, me (6.1).  
 itū n., side (5.2).  
 itu'āiga n., kind, sort (16.3).  
 itūlā n., hour (11.5).  
 i'u v.i., end. i'u ina finally (16.6).  
 i'uga n., end (16.6).  
 Iulai n., July (6.3).  
 Iuni n., June (6.3).  
 iunivesitē n., university (1.4).  
 iva num., nine (10.1).

## K

kalapu n., club (1.4).  
 kale n., curry (9.6).  
 kāloti n., carrot (10.8).  
 kāmuta n., carpenter (2.6).  
 kapeneta n., cabinet (3.3).  
 kāpeta n., linoleum, carpet (2.4).  
 kāpisi n., cabbage (5.6).  
 kāpoti n., cupboard (1.4).  
 keke n., cake (7.10).  
 kesi n., gas (9.6).  
 kī<sup>1</sup> n., key (15.8).  
 kī<sup>2</sup> v.t., turn on (5.6).  
 Kilisimasi n., Christmas (1.1).  
 kināmoni n., cinnamon (9.6).  
 kirikiti n., cricket (12.9).  
 Kirisimasi n., Christmas (1.1).  
 kofe n., coffee (5.2).  
 koko n., cocoa (6.9). koko alaisa n.,  
 rice with cocoa (9.6).  
 koko'ē v.i., crow (7.10).  
 kola n., collar (4.9).  
 komipiuta n., computer (1.4).  
 komiti n., committee (1.4).  
 konetineta n., continent (1.4).  
 koniferenisi n., conference (7.10).  
 kōvana n., governor.

**kuata** n., quarter (11.11).

**kuka** n., cooking (5.6).

**kūkama** n., cucumber (10.8).

**kuluku** n., 1. crook. 2. crooked behaviour (13.6).

## L

**la** art. + poss.prep., (9.1).

**lā** <sup>1</sup> part., used in questions to make them more friendly.

**lā** <sup>2</sup> dem. (pl. of *lelā*), those (11.2).

**lā** <sup>3</sup> pron., they (two) (7.1).

**lā** <sup>4</sup> 1. n., sun. 2. v.i., 'Ua *lā*. The sun shines.

**lā e** TAM, (4.5).

**lā'au** n., plant, tree, vegetables, wood.

**lā'au su'isu'i** n., sewing machine (5.8).

**lae** dem. (pl. of *lale*), those (11.2).

**lafi** v.i., hide (7.10).

**lafo** v.t., send (6.2, 14.4).

**lafu** n., herd (9.6).

**lagi** n., sky, heaven (12.6).

**lagona** 1. v.t., feel. 2. n., feeling (8.7).

**laia** dem. (pl. of *lea*), these (11.2).

**lāina** v.i., (be) exposed to the sun (12.6).

**laisene** n., license (12.8), **laisene 'aveta'avale** n., driver's licence (9.6).

**la'itiiti** v.i. (pl. *lāiti*), (be) little, small, young (5.3).

**lale** dem., that (7.5, 11.2).

**lalo** l.n., down, below, under (2.2, 5.4).

**lalolagi** n., world (15.6).

**lana** poss.pron., his, her, its (8.1).

**lanu** n., colour (4.7, 8.3).

**lanumeamata** v.i., (be) green (4.9) > *mea, mata* <sup>3</sup>.

**lanumoana** v.i., (be) blue (4.7) > *moana*.

**lanumoli** v.i., (be) orange (4.9).

**lanupīniki** v.i., (be) pink (4.9).

**laoa** n., u.f., house of a talking chief (3.2).

**lapata'iga** n., warning, advice (8.7).

**lāpo'a** v.i. (pl. *lāpopo'a*), (be) big, large (4.7, 5.3).

**lāpotopoto** v.i., (be) round (7.10).

**lata** v.i., (be) close, near (12.1).

**lātou** pron., they, them (pl.) (6.1).

**lau** poss.pron., your (sg.) (8.1).

**la'u** <sup>1</sup> poss.pron., my (8.1).

**la'u** <sup>2</sup> v.t., carry, transport (15.2).

**lā'ua** pron., they (two) (6.1).

**lāuga** n., speech (13.7).

**laulau** 1. v.t., serve the food on platters or on the table (9.6). 2. n., platter, table (5.4).

**laupepa** n., sheet of paper (8.7).

**lauti** n., tea, tea-leaves (10.8).

**lava** <sup>1</sup> v.i., (be) enough (12.7).

**lava** <sup>2</sup> part., very, indeed 'O *lea lava*. That is so (6.8).

**lavalava** n., clothes (4.8).

**lavea'i** v.i., rescue, deliver (16.1).

**le** art., (5.1).

**lē** neg., not (4.8, 5.5, 7.6). **lē tioa** interj., no wonder! (7.8).

**lea** dem., this (2.3, 11.2), then (9.3).

**Le vāiaso lea**. Next week. (11.2).

**leaga** <sup>1</sup> v.i., (be) bad (4.3).

**leaga** <sup>2</sup> conj., because (15.1).

**leai** 1. interj., no (4.5). 2. v.i., there is not (5.1).

**lēfea** interr., which? (8.3).

**le'i** neg., not, not yet (5.2, 7.6).

**leie** dem. (pl. of *lele*), these (11.2).

**lēiloa** v.i., be lost (4.9).

**leitiō** n., radio (5.8).

**lelā** dem. (pl. *lā*), that (11.2).

**lēlavā** v.i., (be) exhausted, be tired (of) (12.9, 15.7).

**lele** <sup>1</sup> v.i., fly (7.11).

**lele** <sup>2</sup> dem. (pl. *lē, leie*), this (11.2).

**lelei** v.i., (be) good (4.3).

**lenā** dem. (pl. *nā*), that (11.2).

**lenei** dem. (pl. *nei*), this (11.2).

**leo** n., voice (7.5).

**leoleo** n., police (13.1).

**lēsona** n., lesson (1.11).

**leva** v.i., be a long time ago (12.1).

**lialia** n., vermicelli (5.6).

**lilo** adv., out of sight (7.10).

**lima** <sup>1</sup> n., hand, arm (3.1, 4.9).

**lima** <sup>2</sup> num., five (10.1).

**limamatua** n., thumb (8.7).

**līpoti** n., report (1.4, 6.6).

**lo** art. + poss.prep., (9.1).

**loa** adv., then, immediately (7.9, 9.3).

**logo** n., bell (14.8).

**logonoa** v.i., (be) deaf (5.2).

**lōia** n., lawyer (2.6).

**loka** 1. v.t., lock (14.8). 2. n., lock.

**lole** n., lolly (10.8).

**loli** n., lorry, truck (9.6).

**lona** poss.pron., his, her, its (8.1).

**loo** > 'olo'o

**lo'omatua** n. + v. (pl. *lo'omātutua*), (be an) old woman (5.3).

**loto** n., will, heart (15.1). **loto mālosi** v.i. (pl. *loto mālolosi*), (be) stubborn (15.1). **lotonu'u** v.i., (be) patriotic (12.5). **loto tele** v.i. (pl. *loto tetele*), (be) brave (9.6).

**lotu** n., church service (2.6). religion.

**Lotu Tamaiti** n., White Sunday (11.11).

**lou** poss.pron., your (sg.) (8.1).

**lo'u** poss.pron., my (8.1).

**louni** n., loan (1.4).

**lua** <sup>1</sup> num., two (7.7).

**lua** <sup>2</sup> pron., you (two) (7.1).

**lu'au** n., palusami (taro leaves with coconut cream) (6.9).

**luga** l.n., up, top (5.4).

**luma** l.n., front (5.4).

## M

**ma** <sup>1</sup> conj., and (7.2).

**ma** <sup>2</sup> prep., for (6.5).

**ma** <sup>3</sup> part., (12.2).

**mā** <sup>1</sup> pron., we two (but not you) (7.1).

**mā** <sup>2</sup> v.i. (pl. *mamā*), be ashamed (6.4).

**ma'alili** v.i., (be) cold, cool (5.7), feel cold.

**mafai** v.t., (be) able, can, may (12.1).

**mafatiaga** n., distress (15.7).

**mafatua** v.i., sneeze (14.8).

**māfafau** v.i., think (16.4).

**māfine** n., woman (13.5).

**māfolafola** v.i., (be) flat (5.6).

**mago** <sup>1</sup> n., mango (9.2).

**mago** <sup>2</sup> v.i. (pl. *mamago*), (be) dry (4.8).

**mai** <sup>1</sup> dir., to me, to the place I am talking about now (6.6).

**mai** <sup>2</sup> prep., from (6.7). **mai i fea** where from?

**ma'i** 1. v.i. (pl. *mama'i*), (be) sick (4.5, 5.3). 2. sickness (4.9).

**maila** n., mile (10.1).

**maile** n., dog (7.10).

**mailo** n., milo (10.8).

**ma'itaga** n., pregnancy (16.2).

**māketi** n., market (2.6).

**malae** n., open space in the middle of the village. **malae va'alele** n., airport.

**malaga** 1. v.i., travel (4.6). 2. n., party of travellers.

**mālamalama** v.i., understand (10.7).

**malemo** v.i., drown (4).  
**malie** v.i., agree (12.7, 15.7), be pleased (16.3). **malie lou loto** would you mind? (14.6).  
**mālie** v.i., (be) funny (7.9).  
**malieu** v.i., u.f. (pl. *māliliu*), die (3.2).  
**malieu mai** v.i., be welcomed (3.4).  
**mālō** <sup>1</sup> n., 1. greeting (6.8). 2. congratulations! (12.5).  
**mālō** <sup>2</sup> n., government (16.1).  
**mālō** <sup>3</sup> n., guest  
**mālōlō** v.i., have a rest (12.9).  
**mālōloga** n., rest (12.9).  
**mālōlōina** v.i., (be) healthy (16.2).  
**mālosi** v.i. (pl. *mālosi*), 1. (be) strong (5.3). 2. (be) dark (of colours).  
**mālū** v.i., (be) cool (12.8).  
**mālūlū** v.i., (be) cold (of weather).  
**mamā** v.i., (be) clean, clear, pure (12.6).  
**mamao** v.i., (be) far (4.3).  
**Māmōna** n., Mormon (11.4).  
**mana** n., (supernatural) power (16.1).  
**mānaia** v.i. (pl. *mānanaia*), (be) fine, good, nice (1.2).  
**mana'o** 1. v.i. (pl. *mānana'o*), want (5.2, 7.4). 2. n. wish, need (16.3).  
**manatu** 1. v.i. (pl. *mānanatu*), think. 2. n., thought (8.7).  
**manatua** v.t., remember (14.2).  
**manava** n., stomach (4.9).  
**mānava** v.i., finish work (1.3).  
**manuia** v.i., (be) well, happy, lucky (1.3, 4.5).  
**manumālō** v.i., win (12.5).  
**mā'ona** v.i. (pl. *mā'o'ona*), be full (after a meal) (9.6).  
**maota** n., u.f., house of a high chief (3.2).  
**māsae** v.i., be torn (4.9).  
**masalo** adv., may be (6.8).  
**māsani** 1. v.i., be used to, (be) usual (12.1). 2. n., habit (16.6).

**māsima** n., salt (5.8).  
**māsina** n., moon, month (7.10).  
**masini tāmea** n., washing machine (8.7).  
**masoā** n., starch (4.9).  
**mata** <sup>1</sup> n., eye (4.9), (pl.) eyes, face (8.6).  
**mata** <sup>2</sup> adv., do you think?  
**mata** <sup>3</sup> v.i., (be) raw, uncooked (4.10).  
**mataala** v.i., alert (9.6).  
**matafele** v.i., (be) scared (15.8).  
**matāgāluega** n., department (11.10).  
**matagi** n., wind (12.6).  
**matai** n., chief (2.5).  
**matamata** v.i., look at, watch (13.1).  
**matamataga** n., sightseeing (12.9).  
**matamoe** v.i., be sleepy (14.8).  
**matanana** v.i., be a pain, be spoilt (14.8).  
**mata'utia** v.i., (be) terrible (15.6).  
**mate** v.i., (of animals, plants) die (16.6).  
**Mati** n., March (6.3).  
**mātou** pron., we (I and they, but not you) (6.1).  
**matua** n. (pl. *mātua*), parent (5.3).  
**matua** 1. v.i., (pl. *mātutua*), old (10.3). 2. age (10.3).  
**matua'i** adv., very (12.7).  
**mau** 1. v.t., hold. 2. n., belief (8.7).  
**maua** v.t., get.  
**mā'ua** pron., we (I and him or her, but not you) (6.1).  
**mauga** n., mountain (7.10).  
**maukeni** n., pumpkin (10.8).  
**maulu** v.i., swim under the water (7.10), dash in.  
**ma'umaga** n., taro plantation (5.8).  
**Mē** n., May (6.3).  
**mea** n., thing (4.7). **mea'ai** n., food (4.7). **meaalofa** n., present, gift (6.8). **meaā'oga** n., homework

(15.8). **mea fa'apipi'i** n., band aid  
 (14.8). **mea fulunifo** n., toothpaste  
 (10.8). **mea pu'eata** n., camera  
 (9.6). **mea tatā** n., laundry, washing  
 (4.8).  
**meleni** n., melon (10.8).  
**milionā** num., million (10.1).  
**mimita** v.i. (pl. *femitai*), be proud (of)  
 (6.4).  
**minisitā** n., minister (14.8).  
**minoi** v.i., move (14.8).  
**mīnute** n., minute (11.5).  
**misa** n., fight (4.9).  
**misi** v.t., miss (13.4).  
**mitiafu** n., T-shirt (4.9).  
**mo** prep., for (6.5).  
**moa** <sup>1</sup> n., chicken (5.6).  
**moa** <sup>2</sup> v.t., mow (13.7).  
**moana** n., deep sea (4.7).  
**moe** v.i. (pl. *momoe*), sleep (2.1).  
**moega** n., bed (5.8).  
**mole** v.i., choke, suffocate (12.9).  
**moli** n., orange (9.6). **moli Saina** n.,  
 mandarin (10.8).  
**mōlī** n., lamp (11.4).  
**momoli** v.t., take s.o. somewhere  
 (11.4).  
**mū** v.i., burn (14.8).  
**muamua** v.i., go first, (be) first (12.1).  
**mulimuli** v.i., (be) last (12.1).  
**mūmū** v.i., (be) red (4.9).  
**musu** v.i. (pl. *mumusū*), do not like, be  
 sulking, be reluctant (to do) (6.4).

## N

**na** <sup>1</sup> pron., he, she, it (7.1).  
**na** <sup>2</sup> TAM, (4.2).  
**nā** dem. (pl. of *lenā*), those (11.2).  
**nae** dem. (pl. of *nale*), those (11.2).

**nai** art., (5.1).  
**naifi** n., knife (1.2).  
**nale** dem., that (11.2).  
**nānei** t.n., later today, tonight (11.5).  
**na'o** adv., only, just (6.8).  
**na'u** TAM + pron., var. of *na'u* (7.1).  
**nei** 1. dem., these (pl. of *lenei*) (11.2). 2.  
 now.  
**ne'i** neg. TAM, so that not (15.3).  
**ni** art., (5.1).  
**nifo** n., tooth (4.9).  
**nila** n., needle (5.8).  
**nisi** (< *ni isi*) some (5.2).  
**niu** 1. n., coconut tree (9.4). 2. n.,  
 unripe coconut, suitable for drinking  
 (5.1).  
**Niu Sila** n., New Zealand (1.4).  
**nofo** v.i. (pl. *nonofo*), sit, stay (1.2, 2.1,  
 5.3).  
**nofoa** n., seat, chair (8.7).  
**Nōvema** n., November (6.3).  
**nūmela, nūmera** n., number (1.2).  
**nusipepa** n., newspaper (13.7).  
**nu'u** n., village (2.5).

## O

**o** prep., of (3.1).  
**ō** v.i., pl. of *alu*.  
**'o** <sup>1</sup> TAM, (short form of *'olo'o*), (4.5),  
**'O ā mai 'oe?** How are you? (1.3).  
**'o** <sup>2</sup> part., used with noun phrases (2.3).  
**'ō** <sup>1</sup> num., zero (10.1).  
**'ō** <sup>2</sup> l.n., there far away (11.3).  
**'oe** pron., you (sg.), (2.3).  
**'ōfisa** n., office (3.1).  
**'ofu** 1. n., dress (3.1). 2. v. (pl. *'o'ofu*)  
 get dressed.  
**'ofutino** n., shirt (4.9).  
**'ofuvae** n., pants, trousers (4.9).

'ogātotonu n., middle (5.4).  
 'ogāumu n., oven, hearth (8.7).  
 'oi interj., oh (6.8).  
 oka n., raw marinated fish (6.9).  
 'oka gosh! (1.3).  
 'oka'oka gosh! (1.3).  
 'Oketopa n., October (6.3).  
 ola v.i., live (7.3).  
 ōlaga n., life (10.3).  
 'ole l.n., there not too far away (11.3).  
 'ole'ā TAM, (4.1, 4.6).  
 'oli'oli v.i., (be) joyful (9.6).  
 olo v.t., scrub (2.4).  
 'olomatua n. (pl. 'olomātutua), old woman (5.3).  
 'olo'o TAM, (4.4).  
 ona <sup>1</sup> poss.pron., his, her, its (8.1).  
 ona <sup>2</sup> conj., that (12.1).  
 'ona conj., because (15.1).  
 'ōnā v.i., (be) drunk (7.8).  
 ono num., six (10.1).  
 onosa'i v.i., (be) patient (9.3).  
 o'o v.i., arrive, reach (12.7).  
 oso <sup>1</sup> v.i., jump (10.4).  
 oso <sup>2</sup> v.i., break out (illness) (15.8).  
 oso <sup>3</sup> n., food you take as a present when you visit some people or when you return to your family (12.9).  
 osofia v.t., attack (14.2).  
 'ote v.i., scold, tell off (13.7).  
 oti v.i. (pl. *feoti*), die (3.2, 5.3).  
 'oti v.t., cut (with scissors) (5.6).  
 ou poss.pron., your (many things) (8.1).  
 'ou pron., I (7.1).  
 o'u poss.pron., my (many things) (8.1).  
 'oulua pron., you (two) (6.1).  
 'outou pron., you (more than two) (6.1).  
 'ova v.i., exaggerate, make up a story (13.7).

ovasiteia n., overstayer (1.4).

## P

pā <sup>1</sup> n., fence, enclosure (11.4). pā  
 lā'au n., hedge (11.4).  
 pā <sup>2</sup> v.i., explode (1.4).  
 pa'e'e v.i. (pl. *pā'e'e'e*), (be) thin (4.7, 5.3).  
 pa'epa'e v.i. (pl. *papa'e*), (be) white (4.7, 5.3).  
 pāgotā n., criminal, culprit, prisoner (13.1).  
 pa'ia v.i., (be) holy, sacred (16.1).  
 paiē v.i., (be) lazy (12.2).  
 paipa n., tap (15.8).  
 pālagi n., white person (5.8).  
 palaka v.t., plug (5.6).  
 palapala n., soil (4.9).  
 palapalā v.i., (be) dirty (with soil) (4.9).  
 palauvale v.i., swear (13.7).  
 Pālemia n., Prime Minister (11.10).  
 palepō v.i., u.f., arrive at night (12.6).  
 pālota n., election, ballot (7.10).  
 panikeke n., pancake (9.6).  
 pa'ō n., noise (10.8).  
 papatiso n., baptism (9.6).  
 papātua n., back (4.9).  
 pāsese 1. n., fare (10.1). 2. n., passenger (15.2). 3. v.i., use (money) for the fare (15.6).  
 pasi n., bus (1.4).  
 pāsio n., passionfruit (9.6).  
 pata n., butter (7.10).  
 pateta n., potato (5.6).  
 pātī n., party (7.11).  
 patipati v.i., clap (10.4).  
 pātua n., back (10.4).  
 pāū v.i., (be) eerie (1.1).  
 pa'u n., skin, leather, tyre (1.1, 8.4).

**pa'ū** v.i. (pl. *pa'u'ū*), fall (1.1), be on sale (10.7).

**pau** v.i., (be) all (1.1).

**pauna** n., pound (11.1).

**pē**<sup>1</sup> v.i. (pl. *pepē*), 1. (be) dead (of an animal). 2. (be) out (of a fire) (5.6). 3. (be) overripe (7.10). 4. (be) paralysed, numb (of limbs) (12.9).

**pē**<sup>2</sup> conj., introducing indirect questions (4.8), conditional clauses (15.2).

**pē**<sup>3</sup> adv., about (15.7).

**pe'a** n., bat, flying fox (7.10).

**pea**<sup>1</sup> n., pear (10.8).

**pea**<sup>2</sup> adv., still (4.5).

**pea**<sup>3</sup> n., pair (4.9).

**pe'epe'e** n., coconut cream (5.6).

**pefu** n., dust (11.4).

**pei** v.i., (be) like, as (16.2).

**peni** n., pen (5.2). **peni utu** n., fountain-pen (8.7).

**penisini** n., petrol (14.7).

**penitala** n., pencil (8.7).

**penu** n., grated coconut (5.6).

**pepa**<sup>1</sup> n., paper, packet, carton (10.8).

**pepa fa'aipoipo** n., marriage certificate (9.6). **pepa fa'amaonia** n., identity card (9.6). **pepa fānau** n., birth certificate (9.6). **pepa malaga** n., visa (9.6). **pepa papatiso** n., baptism certificate (9.6). **pepa susu** n., carton of milk (10.8).

**pepa**<sup>2</sup> n., pepper (9.6).

**pepe** n., baby (3.1).

**pepelo** v.i., lie (6.9).

**peresitene** n., president (15.8).

**Peretānia** n., Britain (6.9).

**pese** 1. v.i. (pl. *pepese*), sing. 2. n., song (3.1).

**pī** n., pea, bean (10.8).

**pia** n., beer (7.10).

**piki** n., piggy (8.5).

**piki'apu** n., pick-up (9.6).

**pili** n., bill (14.5).

**pilitati** n., pilchard (10.8).

**piliti** v.i., (be) pleated (4.8).

**pisa** 1. v.i., make noise. 2. n., noise (14.5).

**pisapisaō** v.i., make loud noises (13.7).

**pisi** v.i., (be) busy (4.3).

**pīsupo** n., corned beef (5.7).

**po** interr.part., (11.10).

**pō** 1. v.i., (be) night (4.4). 2. n., night (11.5).

**pogisā** v.i., (be) dark (15.8).

**polokalame** n., program (1.4).

**ponāivi** n., bone (5.6).

**po'o** (interr.part. *po* + nom.part. 'o), (5.2).

**popo** n., ripe coconut (5.6).

**popole** v.i., worry, be worried about (6.3).

**poto** v.i. (pl. *popoto*), (be) clever (5.3).

**potu** n., room (2.4). **potu 'ai** n., dining room (5.8). **potu mālōlō** n., sitting room (2.4). **potu moe** n., bed room (5.8). **potu tā'ele** n., bathroom (2.4).

**pou** n., post (11.4).

**povi** n., cattle (9.6).

**pū** v.i., have a hole (4.9).

**pua'a** n., pig (5.8).

**pu'e** v.t., catch, take (13.1).

**pu'eata** v.i., take pictures (9.6).

**puipui** n., wall (2.4), fence off, ward off (5.8), protect.

**pule** n., boss (12.9). **puleā'oga** n., school principal (2.6). **pulenu'u** n., village mayor (2.6).

**pūlou** 1. n., hat (4.9). 2. v.i., wear a hat.

**pulumu** 1. n., brush (10.8). 2. v.i., brush. **pulumu fulunifo** n., toothbrush.

**puna** v.i., boil (5.6).

**pupuni** v.i., close, screen off (10.7).

**pusa** n., box. **pusa 'aisa** n., fridge (5.8).

**pusi** n., cat (6.9).

**pu'upu'u** v.i. (pl. *pupu'u*), (be) short (4.7, 5.3).

## R

**reitiō** n., radio (1.2).

## S

**sā** <sup>1</sup> v.i., (be) forbidden, banned, sacred (12.1).

**sā** <sup>2</sup> n., u.f., boat, canoe (12.6).

**sā** <sup>3</sup> TAM, (2.1, 4.1, 4.2).

**sa'eu** v.t., stir (5.6).

**saga** n., corn (10.8).

**saienisi** n., science (1.4).

**sā'ili** v.t., search (13.2).

**sā'iliga** n., search (13.2).

**Saina** n., China (6.9).

**saini** v.t., sign (14.8).

**sālati** n., salad (6.9).

**salu** v.t., sweep (2.4).

**samasama** v.i., (be) yellow (4.9).

**sami** n., sea (9.6).

**sana** poss.pron., his, her, its (8.1).

**sa'o** v.i., (be) correct, right (4.3).

**sapasui** n., chopsuey (6.9).

**sasa** v.t., smack, beat (13.1).

**sasa'a** v.t., pour (5.6).

**sau** <sup>1</sup> v.i. (pl. *ō mai*), come (2.1).

**sau** <sup>2</sup> poss.pron., your (sg.) (8.1).

**sa'u** <sup>1</sup> poss.pron., my (8.1).

**sa'u** <sup>2</sup> var. of **sā 'ou** (7.1).

**sāuā** v.i., (be) cruel (1.1).

**sāuni** v., prepare, get ready (6.3).

**sāuniuni** v.i., prepare (12.9).

**saunoa** v.i., u.f., speak (11.10).

**sausaunoa** v.i., u.f., dance (12.5).

**savali** v.i. (pl. *sāvavali*), walk (2.1, 5.3).

**savalia** v.t., walk on (13.7).

**savaliga** n., walk (13.2).

**se** art., a, any (5.1).

**sē** part., expressing impatience (14.6).

**se'e** v.i., slide, glide (12.5).

**se'evae** n., shoe (9.1).

**sefulu** num., ten (10.1).

**se'i** TAM, (9.3).

**se'ia** conj., until (15.6).

**sēkone** n., second (11.5).

**selau** num., hundred (10.1).

**sele** v.t., shave (8.6).

**seleulu** n., scissors (5.8).

**selo** num., zero (10.1).

**selu** v.t., comb (8.6).

**seminā** n., seminar (7.10).

**sene** n., cent (10.6).

**sesē** v.i., (be) wrong (1.3).

**Sētema** n., September (6.3).

**si** art., the (dear, poor) (5.1).

**siaki** <sup>1</sup> v.t., check (14.7).

**siaki** <sup>2</sup> n., cheque (14.8).

**Siāmani** n., Germany (6.9).

**siamupini** n., champion (1.4).

**sifi** n., shift (1.4).

**sikafu** n., scarf (4.9).

**sikaleti** n., cigarette (1.2).

**sikareti** n., cigarette (1.1).

**sikolasipi** n., scholarship (11.10).

**sili** v.i., (be) better, best, more, most (12.1).

**sina** art., a little bit of (5.1).

**si'osi'omaga** n., environment.

**sipi** n., jeep (9.6).

**sipuni** n., spoon (1.4).

**sisi** n., cheese (10.8).



**sitaili** n., style (1.4).  
**siva** 1. v.i. (pl. *sisiva*), dance (2.1, 5.3).  
     2. n., dance (4.9).  
**sōia** v., stop doing s.th. (14.5).  
**soifua** n., u.f., life, good health (1.3).  
**soifuaga** n., u.f., life (10.3).  
**soka** n., soccer (12.9).  
**sola** v.i., escape (16.6).  
**sole!** n., boy! (7.9).  
**solo** <sup>1</sup> v.t., dry (2.4).  
**solo** <sup>2</sup> n., towel (12.8).  
**solofanua** n., horse (2.6).  
**solosolo** n., handkerchief (3.1).  
**sona** poss.pron., his, her, its (8.1).  
**so'o** adv., often (8.5).  
**sōsisi** n., sausage (6.9).  
**sōsō** v.i., move close (7.10).  
**sou** poss.pron., your (sg.) (8.1).  
**so'u** <sup>1</sup> (short form of *se'i o'u*) > *se'i* (9.3).  
**so'u** <sup>2</sup> poss.pron., my (8.1).  
**suaesi** n., pawpaw porridge (9.6).  
**suafa** n., u.f., name (3.2, 16.1).  
**suafa'i** n., banana porridge (9.6).  
**suamalie** v.i., (be) sweet (7.10).  
**su'e** v.t., search (14.8).  
**su'ega** n., exam (6.5).  
**suga!** n., girl! (7.9).  
**sui** 1. v.t., change. 2. n., change (10.6).  
**su'i** v.t., sew (12.1).  
**suka** n., sugar (6.6).  
**sulu** v.i., take refuge to (15.7).  
**supo** n., soup (14.1).  
**supoketi** n., spaghetti (10.8).  
**susu** n., milk (7.10).  
**susū mai** v.i., u.f., be welcomed (3.4).  
**susuga** n., u.f., the honourable chief, pastor, government official (3.3).  
**susulu** v.i., shine (12.8).

## T

**ta** pron., poor me (7.1).  
**tā** <sup>1</sup> pron., we two (I and you) (7.1).  
**tā** <sup>2</sup> v.t., strike (11.6). **tā piano** play piano.  
**ta'agulu** v.i., snore (10.4).  
**ta'alo** v.i. (pl. *ta'a'alo*), play (6.9).  
**ta'aloga** n., game (4.9).  
**ta'amū** n., a plant with a large edible root, related to taro, but larger (5.6).  
**ta'avale** n., car (3.1). **ta'avale la'itiiti** n., taxi (little car) (9.6). **ta'avale la'u pāsese** n., taxi (car transporting passengers) (15.2).  
**ta'e** v.i., break (15.3).  
**taeao** 1. n., morning. 2. t.n., tomorrow (1.1).  
**tā'ele** v.i. (pl. *tā'e'ele*), bathe, have a shower (3.2).  
**ta'elega** n., bath (13.2).  
**tafatafa** l.n., side (16.6).  
**tafao** v.i. (pl. *tāfafao*), go out, go for a walk, go for a holiday (6.9).  
**tāfaoga** n., outing, trip, visit, holiday (11.9).  
**tafēfē** interj., expressing fear or surprise (13.4).  
**taga** v.i., be allowed, permitted (12.1).  
**tāgamea** n., laundry (2.4).  
**tagata** n., person (2.3). **tagata 'ese** n., stranger (14.6).  
**tagi** v.i. (pl. *fetāgisī*), cry (14.2).  
**tagisia** v.t., cry over; ask for help by showing tears (14.2).  
**tagivale** v.i., (be) whingey (14.8).  
**tai** adv., soon (13.4).  
**ta'i** adv., (short form of *matua'i*), very (10.7).  
**ta'i-** pref., each (10.2).  
**taimi** n., time (4.7).

- ta'ita** pron., I, me (6.1).  
**ta'ita'i** v.t., lead (16.1).  
**tala** <sup>1</sup> n., story (1.1).  
**tala** <sup>2</sup> v.t., withdraw (money) (15.1).  
**tala 'a'ao** v.i., u.f., walk, arrive, come (esp. in speech formulas) (16.3).  
**tala ane** l.n., next (5.4).  
**tala atu ananafi** t.n., the day before yesterday (11.5). **tala atu taeao** t.n., day after tomorrow (11.5).  
**tālā** n., dollar (1.1).  
**talafeagai (ma)** v.i., be in accordance (with) (15.7).  
**talane** > **tala ane**  
**talanoa** v.i., talk, speak (7.5).  
**talanoaga** n., talk (11.10).  
**talanoaina** v.t., discuss s.th. (14.2).  
**tali** 1. v.t., answer (14.8). 2. n., answer (1.3).  
**taliga** n., ear (8.7).  
**talo** n., taro (5.6).  
**tālofa** interj., hello, hi (1.2).  
**talu** prep., since (12.4). **talū ona** since (11.11).  
**tama** n., boy, child (1.1). **tama tama** n., boy (3.6). **tama teine** n., girl (3.6).  
**tamā** n., father (1.1).  
**tama'i** n., (only used in compounds), something little. **tama'ilima** n., finger (8.7). **tama'i ta'avale** n., taxi (12.7). **tama'ivae** n., toe (8.7).  
**tama'ita'i** n., lady, madam (2.5).  
**tamaiti** n. pl., children (2.1).  
**tamaitiiti** n. (pl. *tamaiti*), child (also *tamaititi*) (5.3).  
**tamāloa** n. (pl. *tamāloloa*) man (5.3).  
**tamāli'i** n., high ranking chief (12.6).  
**tamāo'āiga** n., wealth (16.2).  
**tāmea** v.i., do the laundry (10.8).  
**tamo'e** v.i. (pl. *tāmomo'e*, *taufetuli*), run (12.9).  
**tamo'ega** n., run (13.6).  
**tāne** n., husband (3.1).  
**tanu** v.t., bury (16.6).  
**tāofi** n., opinion (8.7).  
**tapē** v.t., kill (an animal) (13.1), extinguish (fire), turn off (light) (5.6).  
**tapena** v.t., tidy up (2.4), decorate.  
**tapua'i** 1. v.i., support. 2. n., support (12.5).  
**tapua'iga** n., u.f., prayer, worship (12.5).  
**tapulima** n., wrist (8.7).  
**tapuni** v.t., shut (2.4).  
**tapuvae** n., ankle (8.6).  
**tasi** num., one (10.1).  
**tatala** v.t., open (2.4, 14.8).  
**tatalo** 1. v.i., pray (15.4). 2. n., prayer (4.9).  
**tatau** v.i., must, should (12.1).  
**tatipi** v.t. (pl. of *tipi*).  
**tātou** pron., we (I and you), us (me and you) (pl.) (6.1).  
**tau** n., price (10.1).  
**tauaso** v.i., (be) blind (5.2).  
**ta'u** v.t., tell s.th. (6.6).  
**taua** n., war (15.6).  
**tāua** v.i., (be) important (2.5).  
**tā'ua** pron., we two (I and you) (6.1).  
**tauagavale** n., left (11.4).  
**taualuga** n., roof (16.3).  
**tau'au** n., shoulder (8.7).  
**taufa'alili** v.i., make faces, make fun of (6.9).  
**taufa'ase'e** v.i., pretend to be truthful (6.9).  
**taufe'ai** v.i., (be) wild, biting (7.10).  
**taufetuli** v.i., pl. of *tamo'e*, run (13.7).  
**taugatā** v.i., expensive (10.7).  
**taugōfie** v.i., (be) cheap (10.7).  
**taulaga** n., town, harbour (6.8).

**taule'ale'a** n. (pl. *taulele'a*), untitled man (5.3).  
**tauloto** n., verse (13.7).  
**taumafa** v., u.f., eat (3.2).  
**taumafai** v.i., try (12.5).  
**taumatau** n., right (hand) (11.4).  
**taunu'u** v.i., arrive (13.7).  
**tausa'afia** v.i., (be) much approved of (12.5).  
**tausaga** n., year (7.7).  
**tausami** v., u.f., eat (3.2).  
**tausi** <sup>1</sup> n., wife of a talking chief (3.1).  
**tausi** <sup>2</sup> v.t., take care of, care for.  
**tausiga** n., care (16.5).  
**tausisi** v.i., stick (to) (9.6).  
**tautai** v.i., u.f., go fishing (12.5).  
**tautala** 1. v.i., talk. 2. n., way of speaking, language (1.2). **tautala leaga** n., bad language (1.2). **tautala lelei** n., good language (1.2).  
**tautalaitiiti** v.i., (be) cheeky (12.9).  
**tautau** v.t., hang (2.4).  
**tauvaga** n., competition (7.10).  
**te** TAM, (7.1).  
**te'a** v.t., pass (11.6).  
**tei** n., younger brother or sister to whom one shows affection (3.1).  
**te'i** v.i., be shocked, surprised (12.2).  
**teine** n., girl (1.4).  
**teineitiiti** n. (pl. *teineiti*), little girl (also *teineititi*) (5.3).  
**tele** <sup>1</sup> v.i., (be) many (9.2).  
**tele** <sup>2</sup> adv., very (4.3), too.  
**telē** n., size (10.7).  
**telefonī** n., telephone (1.4).  
**Tēsema** n., December (6.3).  
**tēte'a** v.i., (be) divorced (7.2).  
**tete'e** v.t., open (umbrella) (10.4).  
**teu** v.t., decorate (13.1), tidy (14.8).  
**tēuga** n., decoration, costume (14.1).  
**teutusi** n., envelope (8.7).

**tī** n., tea (7.10).  
**ti'eti'e** v.i., sit, ride (5.6).  
**ti'eti'ega** n., ride (12.9).  
**tīfaga** n., cinema, pictures (2.6).  
**tīgā** v.i., hurt (8.2).  
**tikerī** n., degree (8.7).  
**tiliva** 1. v.t., deliver. 2. n., delivery (1.4, 6.6).  
**timu** 1. v.i., rain (12.8). 2. n., rain (4.4).  
**tinā** n., mother (2.3).  
**tino** n., body (4.9).  
**tioa** > *lē*  
**tipi** v.t. (pl. *tatipi*), cut (5.3).  
**tipiloma** n., diploma (8.7).  
**tipitipi** v.t., chop (5.6).  
**tīpoti** n., teapot, hot water jug (5.6).  
**titina** n., rubber, eraser (8.7).  
**tiususū** v.i., yell when s.o. makes loud noises on the road (13.7).  
**tīvī** n., television (8.7).  
**to'a-** pref., (10.1).  
**tō'aga** v.i. (pl. *tō'a'aga*), be zealous, diligent, strive to do s.th. well.  
**to'alua** <sup>1</sup> n., spouse (3.1).  
**to'alua** <sup>2</sup> num., two (persons).  
**to'atasi** num., one (person), single (person) (10.1, 10.7).  
**to'atele** v.i., (be) many (people) (9.2).  
**toe** adv., again, more (1.3, 5.2).  
**toea'ina** n. (pl. *toea'i'ina*), old man (5.3).  
**toeitiiti** v.i., it is nearly, almost going to happen (9.3).  
**tō'esea** v.t., take off, remove (16.5).  
**tōfā** <sup>1</sup> good bye (1.3). **tōfā soifua** good bye (1.3).  
**tōfā** <sup>2</sup> n., u.f., the honourable talking chief (3.3).  
**tofu** v.t., wash (hair) (8.6).  
**togāfa'i** n., banana plantation (5.3).

**togākāpisi** n., cabbage garden (5.8).  
**togāniu** n., coconut plantation (5.8).  
**tōgiga** n., uniform (4.9).  
**toleni** v.i., train, go jogging (6.9).  
**toli** v.t., twist off, pick (13.7).  
**tolu** num., three (10.1).  
**tonu** n., decision (15.1).  
**to'ona'i** n., Sunday meal (13.7).  
**totoe** v.i., be left (7.6).  
**tōtōga** n., internal organs (16.2).  
**totogi** v.t., pay (14.4).  
**totonu** l.n., inside (5.4).  
**tou** pron., you (pl.) (7.1).  
**tū** v.i., stand, stop (12.1).  
**tua** 1. l.n., back, behind (5.4). 2. n., back (short form of *papātua*) (8.7).  
**tuā** l.n., (somewhere) over there.  
**tuafafine** n. (pl. *tuāfafine*), sister of a man (3.1, 5.3).  
**tuagane** n., brother (of a woman) (3.1).  
**tuai** v.i., (be) old, late (4.7, 6.6, 12.1).  
**tui** n., fork (5.8).  
**tuitui** v.t., pick (8.6).  
**tu'itu'i** v.t., pound (5.6).  
**tūlāfale** n., orator, talking chief (2.6).  
**tūlāfono** n., law, rule (9.6).  
**tūlaga** n., position, placing; situation (6.4).  
**tuli** <sup>1</sup> n., knee (4.9).  
**tuli** <sup>2</sup> v.t., chase (6.9).  
**tulou** excuse me (1.3).  
**tumu** v.i. (pl. *tutumu*), (be) full (4.4).  
**tuna** n., eel (16.6).  
**tupe** n., money (1.2).  
**tupu** v.i. (pl. *tutupu*), happen (6.6), break out (15.8).  
**tusi** 1. v., write. 2. n., book (3.1), letter (8.7). **tusi faitau** n., reading book (8.7). **tusifolau** n., passport (9.6).  
**tusipasi** n., certificate (13.6).  
**tūto'atasi** n., independence (15.8).

**tu'u** v.t., put (5.6).  
**tu'ua** n., high ranking chief (12.6).  
**tū'ua** n., be finished (school) (9.6).  
**tu'uaga** n., holidays (11.11).  
**tū'uga** n., race (12.9).

## U

**ua** n., neck (8.7).  
**'ua** <sup>1</sup> TAM, (4.4).  
**'ua** <sup>2</sup> v.i., grunt (8.5).  
**uaina** n., wine (7.10).  
**uati** n., watch, clock (1.1).  
**'ua'ua** v.i., grunt (8.5).  
**ufi** n., yams (5.6).  
**uiga** <sup>1</sup> n., meaning (15.7).  
**uiga** <sup>2</sup> v.i., concern. **e uiga i** about (11.10).  
**uila** <sup>1</sup> n., flash, lightning, electricity (9.6).  
**uila** <sup>2</sup> n., bicycle (2.6). **uila afi** n., motor bike (2.6).  
**uisikī** n., whiskey (7.10).  
**ulaula** v.i., smoke (12.1).  
**ulavale** v.i., (be) naughty (12.2).  
**uliuli** v.i. (pl. *uli*), (be) black (4.9, 5.3).  
**'ulo** n., pot (5.6).  
**ulu** n., head, hair (4.9).  
**'ulu** n., breadfruit (7.10).  
**'uma** v.i., (be) finished, done, over (4.4, 12.1), all (6.3).  
**'umi** 1. v.i. (pl. *'u'umi*), (be) long (4.7). 2. n., length (11.7). **'umī** (v.i.) (be) very long.  
**umukuka** n., kitchen (5.8).  
**uō** n., friend (7.8).  
**'upu** n., word (3.1). **'upu fa'aaloalo** n., respectful word (3.2).  
**usita'i** v.i., obey (16.6).

**uso** n., brother of a man, sister of a woman, i.e. sibling of the same sex (3.1).

**usu** v.i., rise and leave early in the morning (15.7).

**uta** l.n., inland (5.3).

**utu** v.t., fill (14.7).

## V

**vā** n., interval, space between two things or people. **i le vā o** between.

**va'a** n., boat (6.3).

**va'aalo** n., ferry (9.6).

**va'ai** 1. v.i., see (6.4). 2. v.t., look after, mind (6.6).

**va'aiga** n., observation (8.7).

**va'alele** n., plane (7.10).

**va'amaulu** n., submarine (7.10).

**vae** n., leg, foot (1.1, 4.9).

**vaematua** n., big toe (8.7).

**vai** n., water (1.1), medicine (15.8).

**vai suamalie** n., soft drink (7.11).

**vaiaso** n., week (4.3).

**vaisalo** n., coconut porridge (9.6).

**vaitafe** n., river (12.8).

**vaivai** v.i., weak, light (of colours) (4.9).

**vala'au** v.i., shout, call (14.2).

**vala'aulia** v.t., call s.o. to come, invite (14.2).

**vale** n., fool (5.5).

**valea** v.i. (pl. *vālelea*), (be) stupid (5.3).

**vali** v.t., paint (14.8).

**valu** <sup>1</sup> num., eight (6.6).

**valu** <sup>2</sup> v.t., scrape, grate (5.6).

**valuāpō** n., midnight (11.5).

**vao** n., weeds, grass, bush (13.7).

**vase** n., ruler (8.7).

**vasega** n., class (13.7).

**vave** v.i., (be) fast, quick, early, too early (6.6, 12.1).

**vaveao** n., dawn (11.5).

**vela** v.i., be cooked (9.6).

**vevela** v.i., (be) hot (7.7).

**vi'i** v.t., praise.

**vi'iga** n., praise, glory (16.1).

**viko** n., video (9.6).

**vili** v.i., dial, ring (7.4).

**vīneta** n., vinegar (9.6).

**visa** n., visa (9.6).

**vivini** v.i., crow (13.7).

## ENGLISH-SAMOAN VOCABULARY

### A

**able** adj., *mafai* (v.).

**about** <sup>1</sup> prep., (concerning) *e uiga i* (TAM + v. + prep.). I want to talk to you about the report. 'Ou te fia talanoa ia te 'oe e uiga i le līpoti.

**about** <sup>2</sup> adv., (approximately) *pē* (part.). I will leave at about five o'clock. 'Ou te alu pē 'o le tā o le lima.

**accident** n., *fa'alavelave* (n.).

**accordance**, be in ~ with, *talafeagai ma* (v. + prep.).

**account** n., (in a shop) *'aitālafu* (n.).

**advice** n., *fautuaga* (n.), *lapata'iga* (n.).

**affect** v., *āfāina* (v.).

**afraid** adj., *fefe* (v., pl. *fefefe*). I am afraid of you. 'Ou te fefe iā 'oe.

**afternoon** n., *afiafi* (n.).

**again** adv., *toe* (adv.). Come again. Toe sau.

**age** n., *matua* (n.). What's your (sg.) age? 'O le ā lou matua?

**agree** v., *malie* (v.).

**air** n., *'ea* (n.).

**airport** n., *malae va'alele* (n.).

**all** quant., 1. *pau* (v.). That's all. Ona pau lea. 2. *'uma* (v.). All children. 'O tamaiti 'uma.

**allowed** adj., *taga* (v.). Smoking is allowed. E taga le ulaula.

**alright** adj., *lelei* (v.).

**also** adv., *fo'i* (adv.).

**amen** *'āmene*.

**and** conj., 1. *ma* (conj.). Bring some food and something to drink. 'Aumai se mea'ai ma se mea inu. 2. *'ae* (conj.). Some are good and some are bad. E lelei isi, 'ae leaga isi.

**angry** adj., *ita* (v., pl. *feita*). The woman was angry. Sā ita le fafine. We were angry with the woman. Sā mātou feita i le fafine.

**ankle** n., *tapuvae* (n.). My ankle hurts. E tīgā lo'u tapuvae.

**annual** adj., *fa'aletausaga* (adj.). The annual meeting. 'O le fono fa'aletausaga.

**anniversary** n., *fa'amanatuina* (n.).

**another** det., *se isi* (art. + det.).

**answer** 1. v., *tali* (v.). Answer the question. Tali le fesili. 2. n., *tali* (n.). What is the answer? 'O le ā le tali?

**any** det., *so'o* (det.). **anybody** indef.pron., *so'o se tagata* **anything** indef.pron., *so'o se mea*.

**apply** v., *'apalai* (v.).

**April** n., *'Aperila* (n.).

**arm** n., *lima* (n.).

**arrive** v., *taunu'u*, *o'o* (v.). The bus has not arrived yet. E le'i taunu'u/o'o le pasi.

**arrogant** adj., *fia poto* (adv. + v.). Don't be arrogant! 'Aua 'e te fia poto!

**ashamed** adj., *mā* (v., pl. *mamā*).

**ask** v., *fesili* (v.). Ask your father. Fesili i lou tamā. ~ **for permission** *fa'anoi* (v.). Ask your mother for permission. Fa'anoi i lou tinā.

**attack** v., *oso* (v.). The dog attacked the burglar. *Na oso le maile i le gaioi.*

**August** n., *'Aukuso* (n.).

**avocado** n., *'āvoka* (n.).

**awake** adj., *ala* (v., pl. *feala*).

**away** adv., *'ese* (adv.). Go away!  
*Alu 'ese!*

## B

**baby** n., *pepe* (n.). My baby. *'O la'u pepe.*

**back** <sup>1</sup> n., (body part) *papātua* (n., abbr. *pātua, tua*). My back hurts. *'Ua tīgā lo'upapātua.*

**back** <sup>2</sup> n., (space) *tua* (l.n.). In the back of the house. *I tua o le fale.*

**bad** adj., *leaga* (v.). It's bad. *E leaga.*  
Something bad. *'O le mea leaga.*

**bakery** n., *falefalaola* (n.).

**ballot** n., *pālota* (n.).

**banana** n., *fa'i* (n.). **ripe** ~ *fa'ipula* (n.).  
I like ripe bananas. *'Ou te fiafia i le fa'ipula.* ~ **plantation** *togāfa'i* (n.).  
~ **porridge** *suafa'i* (n.). ~ **with coconut cream** *fa'alifu fa'i* (n.).  
**bunch of** ~ *s 'aufa'i* (n.).

**band aid** n., *mea fa'apipi'i* (n.).

**bank** n., *faletupe* (n.).

**banned** adj., *sā* (v.).

**baptism** n., *papatiso* (n.). Where is your baptism certificate? *'O fea lou pepa papatiso?*

**basket** n., *'ato* (n.).

**bat** n., *pe'a* (n.).

**bath** n., *ta'elega* (n.).

**bathe** v., *tā'ele* (v., pl. *tā'e'ele*), *'au'au* (v., u.f.), *fa'amālū* (v., u.f.).

**bathroom** n., *potu tā'ele* (n.).

**bean** n., *pī* (n.).

**bear fruit** *fua* (v.). The breadfruit is bearing fruit. *'O lo'o fua le 'ulu.*

**beard** n., *'ava* (n.).

**beat** v., *sasa* (v.).

**because** conj. 1. *'ona* (conj.). 2. *'auā* (conj. & prep.). 3. *leaga* (conj.).

**because of** (prep.) *'ona 'o*. Because of this. *'Ona 'o le mea lea.*

**bed** n., *moega* (n.). ~ **room** n., *potu moe* (n.). ~ **sheet** n., *'ie 'afu* (n.). Change the bed sheets. *Sui 'ie 'afu.*

**beef** n., *fasi povi* (n.).

**beer** n., *pia* (n.).

**before** prep., *'ae le'i o'o* (TAM + v. + prep.). ...before Christmas. ...*'ae le'i o'o i le Kilisimasi.*

**beg** v., *'aisi* (v.).

**begin** v., *'āmata* (v.). The meeting begins at eight o'clock. *E 'āmata le fono i le valu.*

**behave badly** *agaleaga* (v.). **behave well** *agalelei* (v.).

**behaviour** n., *amio* (n.).

**behind** prep., *tua* (l.n.). Behind the house. *I tua o le fale.*

**belief** n., *mau* (n.). What is your belief in this matter? *'O le ā lau mau i le matā'upu lea?*

**below** prep., *lalo* (l.n.).

**belt** n., *fusi pa'u* (n.). Fasten your seat belt. *Fa'amau lou fusipa'u.*

**bend** v., *fa'ano'uno'u* (v.).

**beside** prep., *'autafa* (l.n.). Beside the chair. *I 'autafa o le nofoa.*

**best** adj., *sili* (v.), *aupito sili* (adv. + v.). You are the best. *E sili 'oe. E aupito sili 'oe.* The best thing. *'O le mea sili. 'O le mea aupito sili.*

**better** adj., *sili* (v.). This is better. *E sili le mea lea.* You better go. *E sili ona 'e alu.*

**bicycle** n., *uila* (n.).

**big** adj., *lāpo'a* (v., pl. *lāpopo'a*). ~ **toe** *vaematua* (n.).

**bill** n., *pili* (n.).

**bind** v., *fusi* (v.).

**birth** n., *fānau* (n.). ~ **certificate** n., *pepa fānau* (n.). You need a birth certificate. *E mana'omia lou pepa fānau.* ~ **day** n., *aso fānau* (n.). Happy birthday! *'Ia manuia lou aso fānau!*

**black** adj., *uliuli* (v., pl. *ulī*).

**blow** v., 1. (nose) *fogi* (n.). Blow your nose. *Fogi lou isu.* 2. (wind) *agi* (v.). The wind blows. *'Ua agi le matagi.*

**blue** adj., *lanumoana* (v.). The sky is blue. *E lanumoana le lagi.*

**boat** n., *va'a* (n.), *sā* (n., u.f.). David's boat. *'O le va'a o Tavita.*

**body** n., *tino* (n.). ~ **hair** n., *fulufulu* (n.).

**boil** v., 1. *puna* (v.i.). The water has boiled. *'Ua puna le vai.* 2. *fa'apuna* (v.t.). Boil the water. *Fa'apuna le vai.*

**bone** n., *ponāivi* (n.).

**book** n., *tusi* (n.). My book. *'O la'u tusi.*

**born** adj., *fānau* (v., pl. *fānanau*). I was born in Apia. *Na 'ou fānau i Apia.*

**boss** n., *pule* (n.). Ask your boss. *Fesili i lou pule.*

**bottle** n., *fagu* (n.). Bring an empty bottle. *'Aumai se atigi fagu.*

**box** n., *pusa* (n.), *atigi pusa* (n.). Inside the box. *I totonu o le atigi pusa.*

**boy** n., *tama* (n.). Margaret's boy. *'O le tama a Makerita.* **boy!** *sole!* Hey boy, come! *Sole, sau!*

**brave** adj., *loto tele* (v.).

**bread** n., *falaoa* (n.). Give me a slice of bread. *'Aumai sa'u fasi falaoa.*

**breadfruit** n., *'ulu* (n.). Breadfruit season. *'O le fuata 'ulu.* ~ **tree** *'ulu* (n.).

**break** v., 1. *ta'e* (v.). The cup broke. *Na ta'e le ipu.* Peter broke the cup. *Na ta'e iā Pita le ipu.* 2. *gau* (v.). I broke my

leg. *Na gau lo'u vae.* ~ **out** (illness) *oso* (v.).

**breast** n., *susu* (n.).

**breastfeed** v., *fa'asusu* (v.).

**briefcase** n., *'ato ta'ita'i* (n.).

**bring** v., *'aumai* (v.).

**Britain** n., *Peretānia* (n.).

**broom** n., *salu* (n.).

**brother** n., 1. (of a man) *uso* (n.). My brother. *'O lo'u uso.* 2. (of a woman) *tuagane* (n.). Sina's brother. *'O le tuagane o Sina.*

**brown** adj., *'ena'ena* (v., pl. *'e'ena*).

**brush** n., *pulumu* (n.). ~ **one's teeth** *fufulu nifo* (v.).

**build** v., *fau* (v.).

**bus** n., *pasi* (n.). I missed the bus. *Na misi le pasi.* ~ **driver** *'ave pasi.*

**bush** n., *vao* (n.).

**busy** adj., *pisi* (v.).

**but** conj., *'ae*, *'a* (conj.).

**butter** 1. n., *pata* (n.). Buy some butter. *Fa'atau mai se pata.* 2. v., *fa'apata* (v.). Butter the slice of bread. *Fa'apata le fasi falaoa.*

**button** n., *fa'amau* (n.).

**buy** v., *fa'atau* (*mai*) (v.).

**bye!** interj., *fā!* (interj.).

## C

**cabbage** n., *kāpisi* (n.). Give me two cabbages. *'Aumai ni kāpisi se lua.* ~ **garden** *togākāpisi* (n.).

**cabinet** n., *kapeneta* (n.).

**cake** n., *keke* (n.).

**call** v., *vala'au* (v.), *fōnō* (v.).

**camera** n., *mea pu'eata* (n.).

**can** <sup>1</sup> mod., *mafai* (v.). I cannot do it. *E lē mafai ona 'ou faia.*



**can** <sup>2</sup> n., 'apa (n.). A can of fish. 'O le 'apai'a.

**canoe** n., va'a (n.), sã (n., u.f.).

**car** n., ta'avale (n.). Drive my car. 'Ave la'u ta'avale.

**care** v., (for s.o.) *tausi* (v.), (for s.o. with love) *alofagia* (v.).

**careful** adj., fa'aeteete (v.).

**carpenter** n., kāmuta (n.).

**carpet** n., kāpeta (n.).

**carrot** n., kālōti (n.).

**carry** v., la'u (v.), (on a yoke between two people) *amo* (v.).

**carton** n., pepa (n.). ~ of milk *pepa susu* (n.).

**cat** n., pusi (n.).

**catch** v., pu'e (v.).

**cattle** n., povi (n.).

**cent** n., sene (n.).

**certificate** n. (for a passed exam), *tusipasi* (n.).

**chair** n., nofoa (n.).

**champion** n., *siamupini* (n.).

**change** 1. v., *sui* (v.). Change your dress. *Sui lou 'ofu*. 2. n. (of money), *sui*. I don't have any change. *E leai sa'u sui*.

**chase** v., *tuli* (v., pl. *tutulī*). Chase the dog away. *Tuli 'ese le maile*.

**cheap** adj., *taugōfie* (v.). It's cheap. *E taugōfie*.

**check** v., *siaki* (v.). Check the tyre. *Siaki lepa'u*.

**cheeky** adj., *tautalaitiiti* (v.). Don't be cheeky! 'Auale tautalaitiiti!

**cheese** n., sisi (n.).

**cheque** n., *siaki* (n.).

**chest** n., fatafata (n.).

**chicken** n., moa (n.). ~ soup *supo moa*.

**chief** n., matai (n.) > high chief, high ranking, talking chief.

**child** n., 1. *tamaitiiti* (n., pl. *tamaiti*), *tama* (n.). School children. *Tamaiti ā'oga*. 2. (one's own children, offspring) *fānau* (n.). My children. 'O la'u fānau.

**chin** n., 'auvae (n.).

**China** n., Saina (n.).

**Chinese** adj., 1. Saina (n.). Chinese people. *Tagata Saina*. Are you Chinese? 'O 'oe 'o se Saina?

**choke** v., mole (v.).

**chop** v., *tipitipi* (v.). Chop the pork. *Tipitipi le fasi pua'a*.

**chop suey** n., *sapasui* (n.).

**Christmas** n., *Kirisimasi*, *Kilisimasi* (n.). Merry Christmas and a Happy New Year. 'Ia manuia le *Kilisimasi ma le Tausaga Fou*.

**church** n., (building) *falesā* (n.). 2. (service) *lotu* (n.). 3. (institution) 'ekālēsia (n.).

**cigarette** n., *sikareti*, *sikaleti*, *utufaga*, *tapa'a* (n.).

**cinema** n., 1. *ūfaga* (n.). Do you want to go to the cinema? 'E te fia alu i le *ūfaga*? 2. (building) *faletifaga* (n.). Where is the cinema? 'O fea le *faletifaga*?

**cinnamon** n., *kināmoni* (n.).

**clap** v., *patipati* (v.). Clap your hands. *Patipati ou lima*.

**class** n., vasega (n.). How many children are in your class? *E to'afia tamaiti i lau vasega*?

**clean** 1. adj., *mamā* (v.). Clean clothes. 'Ofu mamā. 2. v., *fufulu* (v.). Clean the room. *Fufulu le potu*.

**clear** adj., *mamā* (v.).

**clever** adj., *poto* (v., pl. *popoto*).

**clock** n., *uati* (n.).

**close** <sup>1</sup> v., 1. *pupuni* (v.). Close the hole. *Pupuni le pū*. 2. *tapuni* (v.). Close the door. *Tapuni le faitoto'a*.

**close** <sup>2</sup> adj., *latalata* (v.). It is close to the shop. *E latalata i le fale'oloa*. It's close to five o'clock. *'Ua latalata i le lima*.

**cloth** n., *'ie* (n.).

**clothes** n., *lavalava* (n.), *'ofu* (n.).

**club** n., *kalapu* (n.).

**cocoa** n., *koko* (n.).

**coconut** n., 1. (fully ripe) *popo* (n.).

Grate the coconut. *Valu le popo*.

2. (for drinking) *niu* (n.). 3. (grated) *penu* (n.) ~ **cream** *pe'epe'e* (n.).

~ **palm** *niu* (n.) ~ **plantation** *togāniu* (n.). ~ **porridge** *vaisalo* (n.).

**coffee** n., *kofe* (n.). Do you want a cup of coffee? *'E te fia mana'o i se ipu kofe?*

**cold** <sup>1</sup> adj., 1. *ma'alili* (v.). The food is cold. *'Ua ma'alili le mea'ai*. I feel cold. *'Ua 'ou ma'alili*. 2. *mālūlū* (v.). It (the weather) is very cold. *E mālūlū tele*.

**cold** <sup>2</sup> n., (sickness) *fulū* (n.).

**collar** n., *kola* (n.).

**colour** n., *lanu* (n.).

**comb** 1. v., *selu* (v.). Comb your hair. *Selu lou ulu*. 2. n., *selu* (n.). Give me your comb. *'Aumai lou selu*.

**come** v., *sau* (v., pl. *ō mai*). Come tomorrow! *Sau taeao*. *Ō mai taeao*. ~ **back** *fo'i mai* (v.)

**committee** n., *komiti* (n.).

**competition** n., *tauvaga* (n.).

**complain** v., *faitio* (v.).

**complaint** n., *faitioga* (n.).

**complete** adj., *'ātoa* (v.). It's not complete yet. *E le'i 'ātoa*.

**computer** n., *komipiuta* (n.).

**concerning** prep., *e uiga i* (TAM, v. + prep.).

**conference** n., *koniferenisi* (n.), *fono* (n.).

**congratulations!** *mālō!*

**continent** n., *konetinetā* (n.).

**cook** 1. v., *kuka* (v.). Cook the food.

*Kuka le mea'ai*. 2. n., *kuka* (n.). I am the cook. *'O a'u 'o le kuka*. **cooking** n., *kuka* (n.). Who is doing the cooking? *'O ai lā e faiga le kuka?*

**cooked** adj., *vela* (v.). The food is cooked. *'Ua vela le mea'ai*.

**cool** adj., *mālū* (v.).

**corn** n., *saga* (n.).

**corned beef** n., *pīsupo* (n.).

**corpse** n., *oti* (n.), *maliau* (n., u.f.).

**correct** adj., *sa'o* (v.). It's correct. *E sa'o*.

**count** v., *faitau* (v.).

**country** n., *atunu'u* (n.).

**court hearing** n., *fa'amāsinoga* (n.).

**creek** n., *vaitafe* (n.).

**cricket** n., *kirikiti* (n.).

**criminal** n., *pāgotā* (n.).

**crook** n., *kuluku* (n.).

**crow** v., *vivini*, *koko'e* (v.). The roosters crowed. *Sā vivini moa*.

**cruel** adj., *sāuā* (v.).

**cry** v., *tagi* (v.i., pl. *fetāgisi*). The women cried. *Sā fetāgisi fafine*. ~ **over** s.th. *tagisia* (v.).

**cucumber** n., *kūkama* (n.).

**culprit** n., *pāgotā* (n.).

**cup** n., *ipu* (n.).

**cupboard** n., *kāpoti* (n.).

**curry** n., *kale* (n.).

**curtain** n., *'ie pupuni* (n.).

**cut** v., 1. (with a knife) *tipi* (v.t., pl. *tatipi*). Cut into small pieces. *Tipi fa'anini'i*. 2. (with scissors) *'oti* (v.). Cut your hair. *'Oti lou ulu*. 3. Cut off the skin (of potatoes, for example) *fisi* (v.).

## D

**dance** 1. v., *siva* (v., pl. *sisiva*), *ssusaunoa* (v., u.f.). 2. n., *siva* (n.), *ssusaunoa* (n., u.f.).

**dark** adj., 1. *pō* (v.). 2. (of colours) *mālosi* (v., *mālolosi*).

**daughter** n., 1. (of a man) *afafine* (n.). 2. (of a woman) *teine* (n.).

**David** n., *Tāvita* (n.).

**dawn** n., *vaveao* (n.).

**day** n., *aso* (n.). ~ **after tomorrow** *tala atu taeao* (t.n.). ~ **before yesterday** *tala atu ananafi* (t.n.).

**daylight** n., *ao* (n.).

**dead** adj., *oti* (v., pl. *feoti*), *malieu* (v., u.f., pl. *māliliu*). He is dead. 'Ua *oti*. 'Ua *malieu*.

**death** n., *oti* (n.), *malieu* (n., u.f.).

**dear** adj., *si* (art., pl. *nai*). The dear girl. 'O *si teine*.

**debt** n., *'aitālafu* (n.).

**December** n., *Tēsema* (n.).

**decision** n., *tonu* (n.).

**decorate** v., 1. *teu* (v.). 2. *tapena* (v.).

**deep sea** n., *moana* (n.).

**degree** n., *tikerī* (n.). He has a science degree. *E iai lana tikerī fa'asaïenisi*.

**deliver** v., *tiliva* (v.).

**delivery** n., *tiliva* (n.).

**dentist** n., *fōma'i nifo* (n.).

**depart** v., *fa'ae'e* (v.).

**department** n., *matāgālua* (n.).

**destroy** v., *fa'aleaga* (v.).

**dial** v., *vili* (v.). Dial this number. *Vili le nūmera lea*.

**die** v., 1. (of animals, fire) *pē* (v., pl. *pepē*). The dog has died. 'Ua *pē le maile*. 2. (of human beings) *oti* (v., pl. *feoti*), *malieu* (v., u.f., pl. *māliliu*). My father has died. 'Ua *oti lo'u tamā*. The chief has died. 'Ua *malieu le matai*.

**difficult** adj., *faigatā* (v.). It is not difficult. *E lē faigatā*. A difficult boy. 'O *le tama faigatā*.

**diligent** adj., *tō'aga* (v.).

**dining room** n., *potu 'ai* (n.).

**diploma** n., *tipiloma* (n.).

**dirty** adj., *'ele'elea, palapalā* (v.). Dirty clothes. *Lavalava 'ele'elea. Lavalava palapalā*.

**discuss** v., *talanoaina* (v.). We will discuss this topic. 'O *le 'ā mātou talanoaina le matā'upu lea*.

**dish** n., *ipu* (n.).

**dislike** v., *'ino'ino* (v.).

**distress** n., *māfatiaga* (n.).

**dive** v., *tofu* (v.).

**divorced** adj., *tēte'a* (v., pl.). Sina and David are divorced. 'Ua *tēte'a Sina ma Tāvita*.

**do** v., *fai (faia)* (v.), **don't** *'aua* (v.). Don't do it. 'Aua *le faia*.

**doctor** n., *fōma'i* (n.).

**dog** n., *maile* (n.).

**dollar** n., *tālā* (n.).

**door** n., *faitoto'a* (n.). Shut the door. *Tapuni le faitoto'a*.

**doubt** v., *'ailoga* (adv.). I doubt that he will come. 'Ailoga *e sau*.

**down** 1. *ifo* (dir.). Come down from the tree. *Alu ifo i lalo mai le lā'au*. 2. *lalo* (l.n.). Sit down. *Nofo i lalo*.

**dress** 1. n., *'ofu* 2. v., *'ofu* (v., pl. *'o'ofu*).

**drink** 1. v., *inu* (v., pl. *feinu*). 2. n., *mea inu* (n.).

**drive** v., *'ave* (v.). Drive the car. 'Ave *le ta'avale*.

**driver** n., *'ave ta'avale* (n.). ~s *licence laisene 'ave ta'avale*.

**drown** v., *malemo* (v.).

**drunk** adj., *'ōnā* (v.). The boy was drunk. *Sā 'ōnā le tama*.

**dry** 1. adj., *mago* (v., pl. *mamago*). The clothes are dry. 'Ua *mamago lavalava*.  
2. v., *solo* (v.). Dry the dishes. *Solo ipu*.

**dust** n., *pefu* (n.).

**duty** n., (s.th. you have to do for s.o. else) *fe'au* (n.).

## E

**each** det., *ta'i-* pref. Twenty cents each. *Ta'i luasefulu sene*.

**ear** n., *taliga* (n.).

**eerie** adj., *paū* (v.).

**early** adv., adj., *vave* (v.). Come early! *Vave mai!* ~ **morning** *vaveao* (n.). The bus goes in the early morning. *E alu le pasi i le vaveao*. **earlier this morning** *anataeao* (t.n.). **earlier today** *analeilā* (t.n.), *ananei* (t.n.).

**easy** adj., *faigōfie* (v.). It's easy to read Samoan. *E faigōfie ona faitau fa'aSamoa*.

**eat** v., 'ai (v., pl. 'a'ai), *taumafa* (v., u.f., pl. *taumamafa*), *tausami* (v., u.f.). Let's eat. *Tātou 'a'ai*.

**egg** n., *fuāmoa* (n.), ~ **shell** *atigi fuāmoa*.

**eggplant** n., 'isalā'elu (n.).

**eight** num., *valu* (num.).

**election** n., *pālota* (n.).

**electricity** n., *uila* (n.), *eletise* (n.).

**empty** adj., *atigi* (n., used in compounds). Empty bottle. 'O le *atigi fagu*.

**enclosure** n., *pā* (n.).

**engine** n., *afi* (n.).

**engineer** n., 'inisinia (n.). **engineering** n., *fa'a'inisinia* (n.).

**enough** adj., *lava* (v.). It's enough. 'Ua *lava*.

**envelope** n., *teutusi* (n.).

**environment** n., *si'osi'omaga* (n.).

**eraser** n., *titina* (n.).

**errand** n., *fe'au* (n.).

**eternal** adj., *fa'avavau* (v.).

**European** n., *pālagi* (n.).

**exaggerate** v., 'ova *fa'atelē* (v.).

**exam** n., *su'ega* (n.).

**excuse me** interj., *tulou* (interj.).

**exercise book** n., 'api (n.).

**exhausted** adj., *lēlavā* (v.).

**exist** v., *iai* (v.).

**expect** v., *fa'atali* (v.).

**expensive** adj., *taugatā* (v.). It's very expensive. *E taugatā tele*.

**explain** v., *fa'amatala* (v.).

**explanation** n., *fa'amatalaga* (n.).

**explode** v., *pā* (v.).

**expression** n., *fa'a'upuga* (n.).

**extinguish** v., *tapē* (v.).

**extraordinary** adj., 'ese (v.).

**extreme** adj., 'ese (v.).

**eye** n., *mata* (n.).

**eyebrows** n., *fulufulumata* (n.).

## F

**face** n., *mata* (n.pl.). Wash your face. *Fufulu ou mata*.

**factory** n., *falegāosimea* (n.).

**fall** v., *pa'u* (v.).

**family** n., 'āiga (n.). Extended family. 'O le 'āiga *potopoto*.

**far away** adv., *mamao* (v.).

**fare** n., *pāse* (n.). How much is the fare? *E fia le pāse?*

**farmer** n., *faifa'atō'aga* (n.).

**fast** adj., *vave* (v.).

**fasten** v., *fa'amau* (v.).

**father** n., *tamā* (n.).

**fear** v., *fefe* (v.). He feared his father.

*Sā fefe i lona tamā.*

**fever** n., *fiva* (n.).

**February** n., *Fepuari* (n.).

**fed up** adj., *fiu* (v.). I am fed up with this. 'Ua 'ou *fiu i le mea lea*.

**feed** v., *fafaga* (v.).

**feel** v., *lagona* (v.). ~ **cold** *ma'alili* (v.).

I feel cold. 'Ua 'ou *ma'alili*.

**fence** n., *pā* (n.). ~ **off** v., *puipui* (v.).

**fight** 1. n., *misa* (n.). 2. v., *misa* (v.).

Stop fighting. *Tu'u le misa*.

**file** n., *faila* (n.).

**fill** v., 1. *utu* (v.). Fill water into the empty bottle. *Utu ni vai i le atigi fagu*.

2. (make full) *fa'atumu* (v.). Fill the empty bottle with water. *Fa'atumu le atigi fagu i le vai*.

**find** v., *maua* (v.). I haven't found a job yet. *E le'i maua sa'u gāluega*.

**fine** adj., *mānaia* (v.). It's a fine day.

*E mānaia le aso*.

**finger** n., *tama'ilima* (n.).

**fingernail** n., *atigilima* (n.).

**finish** v., *fa'a'uma* (v.). ~ **work** *mānava* (v.).

**finished** adj., *'uma* (v.), (of school) *tū'ua* (v.). The school has finished.

'Ua *tū'ua le ā'oga*.

**first** adj., *muamua* (v.).

**fish** 1. n., *i'a* (n.). 2. v., *fāgota* (v., pl. *fāgogota*).

**fisherman** n., *faifaiva* (n.), *tautai* (n., u.f.).

**fishing trip** n., *faiva* (n.).

**five** num., *lima* (num.).

**flared** *felea* (v.). Flared trousers.

'Ofuvae *felea*.

**flash** n., *uila* (n.).

**flat** adj., *māfolafola* (v.).

**floor** n., *folā* (n.).

**flour** n., *falaoamata* (n.).

**fly** v., *lele* (v.).

**flying fox** n., *pe'a* (n.).

**food** n., 1. *mea'ai* (n.), *mea taumafa*, *mea tausami* (n., u.f.). 2. (food you take as a present when you visit some people or when you return to your family) *oso* (n.).

**fool** n., 1. *vale* (n.). 2. (be a ~) *valea* (v.). You are a fool. 'E *te valea*.

**foot** n., *vae* (n.). I hurt my foot. 'Ua *lavea lo'u vae*.

**for** prep., *ma* (prep.), *mo* (prep.). For five minutes. *Mo le lima minute*.

**forbid** v., *fa'asā* (v.).

**forbidden** adj., *sā* (v.). It is forbidden to smoke. *E sā ona ulaula*.

**force** v., *fa'amālosi* (v.).

**forever** adv., *fa'avavau* (v.).

**forget** v., *galo* (v.). I forgot the book.

*Na galo iate a'u le tusi*. Don't forget the letter. 'Aua *ne'i galo iate 'oe le tusi*.

**forgive** v., *fa'amāgalo* (v.).

**fork** n., *tui* (n.).

**fountain-pen** n., *peni utu* (n.).

**four** num., *fā* (num.).

**Friday** n., *Aso Faraile* (n.).

**fridge** n., *pusa 'aisa* (n.). Put the fish in the fridge. *Tu'u le i'a i totonu o le pusa 'aisa*.

**friend** n., 1. *uō* (n.). My friend. 'O *la'u uō*. 2. (be friends) *uō* (v.). Lani and Leona are friends. *E uō Lani ma Leona*.

**friendship** n., *faigāuō* (n.).

**from** prep., *mai* (prep.). From where? *Mai i fea?*

**front** n., *luma* (l.n.). In front of the house. *I luma o le fale*.

**fruit** n., *fuālā'au* (n.). Buy some fruits. *Fa'atau mai ni fuālā'au*. **bear** ~ *fua* (v.). The mango tree is bearing fruit. 'Ua *fua le mago*.

**fry** v., *falai* (v.).

**full** adj., 1. *tumu* (v.). The bus is full.  
*'Ua tumu le pasi*. 2. (after a meal)  
*mā'ona* (v., pl. *mā'o'ona*). I am full.  
*'Ua 'ou mā'ona*.  
**funeral** n., *falelauasiga* (n.), *tanuga* (n.).  
**funny** adj., *mālie* (v.).

## G

**game** n., *ta'aloga* (n.).  
**garage** n., *faleta'avale* (n.).  
**garlic** n., *aniani Saina* (n.).  
**gas** n., *kesi* (n.).  
**gentleman** n., *ali'i* (n.).  
**Germany** n., *Siāmani* (n.).  
**get** v., *maua* (v.). I have got a  
scholarship. *'Ua maua la'u sikolasipi*.  
~ **dressed** *fai le 'ofu*.  
**ghost** n., *aitu* (n.).  
**gift** n., *meaalofa* (n.).  
**girl** n., *teine* (n.), *teineititi* (n., pl.  
*teineiti*). **girl!** *suga!*  
**give** v., 1. *'aumai*, *'ave* (v.). Give me  
some water. *'Aumai sina vai*. Give the  
letter to your father. *'Ave i lou tamā le*  
*tusi*. 2. *fōa'i* (v., u.f., used in prayers).  
Give us strength. *Fōa'i mai le mālosi*.  
**glass** n., 1. (to drink from) *ipu*  
*mālamalama* (n.). 2. (substance) *tioata*,  
*mālamalama* (n.).  
**glide** v., *se'e* (v.).  
**glory** n., *vī'iga* (n.).  
**go** v., *alu* (v., pl. *ō*). ~ **around** *fealua'i*  
(v., pl. *feoa'i*). ~ **first** *alu muamua*  
(v.). ~ **fishing** *fāgota* (v., pl.  
*fāgogota*), *tautai* (v., u.f.). ~ **for a**  
**stroll** *eva* (v.). ~ **out** *tafao* (v., pl.  
*tāfafao*). ~ **to church** *lotu* (v., pl.  
*lolotu*). We go to church every  
Sunday. *Mātou te lolotu i Aso Sā*  
*'uma*. ~ **to school** *ā'oga* (v., pl.

*ā'o'oga*). Does the girl go to school?  
*E ā'oga le teine?*

**God** n., *Atua* (n.).

**good** adj., *lelei* (v.), *mānaia* (v., pl.  
*mānanaia*). ~ **bye!** *tōfā soifua!*  
~ **night!** *manuia le pō!*

**gosh** *'oka*, *'oka'oka*.

**gossip** v., *faitala* (v.).

**government** n., *mālō* (n.).

**governor** n., *kōvana* (n.).

**grass** n., *vao* (n.).

**green** adj., *lanumeamata* (v.).

**greens** n., *meamata* (n.).

**group** n., *'au* (n., often in compounds).

**grunt** v., *'ua'ua* (v.).

**guest** n., *mālō* (n.). **invited** ~s n.,  
*'au vala'aulia* (n.).

## H

**habit** n., *māsani* (n.). It's his habit.  
*'O lana māsani*.

**hair** n., *ulu* (n.), *lauulu* (n.).

**half** n., adv., *'afa* 1. (n.). For half an  
hour. *Mo le 'afa itūlā*. 2. (v.). It is half  
past five. *'Ua 'afa le lima*.

**hand** n., *lima* (n.). ~**bag** n., *'ato 'asoa*  
(n.).

**handkerchief** n., *solosolo* (n.). My  
handkerchief. *'O lo'u solosolo*.

**hang** v., *tautau* (v.).

**happen** v., *tupu* (v.). What happened?  
*'O le ā le mea 'ua tupu?*

**happy** adj., 1. *fiafia* (v.). The girl was  
very happy. *Sā fiafia tele le teine*.  
2. *manuia* (v.). Happy Christmas!  
*'Ia manuia le Kilisimasi!*

**harbour** n., *taulaga* (n.).

**hat** n., *pūlou* (n.). **wear a** ~ *pūlou* (v.).

**hate** v., *'ino'ino* (v.).

**have** v., *iai* (v., with possessive constructions). I have a car. *E iai la'u ta'avale*. ~ **a hole** *pū* (v.). ~ **a shower** *tā'ele* (v., pl. *tā'e'ele*).

**he** pron., *ia*, *na* (pron.).

**head** n., *ulu* (n.).

**health** n., *soifua* (n.).

**healthy** adj., *mālōlōina* (v.).

**hear** v., *fa'alogo* (v.).

**heart** n., *loto* (n.).

**hearth** n., *'ogāumu* (n.).

**heaven** n., *lagi* (n.).

**hedge** n., *pā lā'au* (n.).

**hello** *tālofa*.

**help** v., *fesoasoani* (v.). **help!** (when in danger) *fia ola* (lit. want live).

**her** <sup>1</sup> pron., *ia* (pron.).

**her** <sup>2</sup> poss.pron., *lona*, *lana*, *ona*, *ana* (art. + *o/a* + pron.). Her book. *'O lana tusi*. Her books. *'O ana tusi*.

**herd** n., *lafu* (n.).

**here** adv., *'ī* (l.n.), *'inei* (l.n.).

**herrings** n., *'ēleni* (n.).

**hi!** *mālō!*

**hide** v., (o.s.) *lafī* (v.).

**high** adj., *maualuga* (v.). ~ **chief** *ali'i* (n.), *afioga* (n., u.f.). ~ **Commission** *Haikomisi* (n.). ~ **Commissioner** *Haikomesina* (n.). ~ **ranking chief** *tu'ua* (n.).

**him** pron., *ia* (pron.) > her.

**his** poss.pron., *lona*, *lana*, *ona*, *ana* > her.

**hit** v., *fasi* (v., pl. *fafasi*).

**hold** v., *mau* (v.), (hold in the hand) *u'u* (v.). ~ **a meeting** *fai le fono*.

**hole** n., *pū* (n.).

**holidays** n., (from school) *tu'uaga* (n. pl.). **go for a** ~ *tafao* (v., pl. *tāfafao*).

**holy** adj., *pa'ia* (v.).

**homework** n., *mea ā'oga* (n.).

**honest** adj., *fa'amāoni* (v.).

**honourable** adj., ~ **high chief** *afioga* (n., u.f.), ~ **pastor** *susuga* (n., u.f.). ~ **talking chief** *tōfā* (n., u.f.).

**horse** n., *solofanua* (n.).

**hospital** n., *falema'i* (n.), *māota gasegase* (n., u.f.).

**hot** adj., *vevela* (v.). It's hot today. *'Ua vevela le aso*.

**hotel** n., *faletalimālō* (n.).

**hour** n., *itūlā* (n.).

**house** n., *fale* (n.). ~ **of a high chief** *maota* (n., u.f.). ~ **of a talking chief** *laoa* (n., u.f.).

**how** interr. 1. *fa'apēfea* (v.). How are you today? *Po 'o fa'apēfea mai 'oe i le asō?* 2. *fa'afēfea* (v.). How do you use your telephone? *E fa'afēfea ona fa'aaogā le telefoni?* ~ **many** *fia* (num.). How many years? *E fia tausaga?* ~ **many times** *fa'afia* (v.). ~ **much** *E fia le tau?*

**humble** adj., *fa'atauva'a* (v.).

**hundred** num., *selau* (num.).

**hungry** adj., *fīa 'ai* (adv. + v.).

**hurricane** n., *afā* (n.).

**hurry** v., *fa'avave* (v.). ~ **up!** *faia'ia!*

**hurt** v., 1. *tīgā* (v.). My tooth hurts. *'Ua tīgā lo'u nifo*. 2. *lavea* (v.). I hurt my foot. *'Ua lavea lo'u vae*.

**husband** n., *tāne* (n.), *to'alua* (n.).

## I

**I** pron., *a'u*, *'ou*, *'ita*, *ta'ita*, *ta* (pron.).

**ice cream** n., *'aisakulimi*, *'asikulimi*, *'aisikulimi* (n.).

**identity card** n., *pepa fa'amaonia* (n.).

**if** conj., 1. (hypothetical) *'āfai* (conj.). If it rains tomorrow,... *'Āfai e timu taeao*,... 2. (counterfactual) *'ana* (conj.). If I were you,... *'Ana 'o a'u 'o 'oe*,...

**ill** adj., *ma'i* (v., pl. *mama'i*), *gasegase* (v., u.f.). **illness** n., *ma'i* (n.), *gasegase* (n., u.f.).

**immediately** adv., *loa* (adv.).

Go immediately. *Alu loa*.

**implore** v., *'ai'oi* (v.).

**important** adj., *tāua* (v.).

**in** prep., *i*, *iā*, *iate* (prep.).

**in order to** (conj.) *'ina 'ia* (conj. + TAM).

**increase** v., *ātili* (v.).

**indeed** adv., *lava* (adv.).

**independence** n., *tūto'atasi* (n.).

**influenza** n., *fulū* (n.).

**inland** adv., *uta* (l.n.). Go inland.

*Alu i uta*.

**inside** adv., prep., *totonu* (l.n.). Inside the house. *I totonu o le fale*.

**intelligent** adj., *poto* (v., pl. *popoto*).

**interrogate** v., *fesiligia* (v.).

**into** prep., *i* (prep.), *i totonu o* (prep. + l.n. + prep.).

**invite** v., *vala'aulia* (v.).

**iron** v., *'āuli* (v.).

**it** pron. > she, her, he, him.

**its** poss.pron., *lana*, *lona*, *ana*, *ona* > her, his.

## J

**jail** n., *falepuipui* (n.).

**January** n., *Ianuari* (n.).

**Japan** n., *Iāpani* (n.).

**Japanese** adj., *Iāpani*, *Sapani* (n.). I saw a Japanese. *Na 'ou va'ai i le Sapani*.

**jeep** n., *sipi* (n.).

**jog** v., *toleni* (v.).

**journey** n., *malaga* (n.).

**joyful** adj., *'oli'oli* (v.).

**judge** n., *fa'amasino* (n.).

**July** n., *Iulai* (n.).

**jump** v., *oso* (v.).

**June** n., *Iuni* (n.).

**just** <sup>1</sup> adv., (a very short time ago), *fa'ato'ā* (adv.). The bus has just gone. *Fa'ato'ā alu le pasi*.

**just** <sup>2</sup> adv., (only), *na'o* (adv.). Just me. *Na'o a'u*.

## K

**kava** n., *'ava* (n.).

**key** n., *kī* (n.).

**keep going** *fa'amālosi* (v.).

**kill** v., 1. (a person) *fasioti* (v.).

2. (an animal) *tapē* (v.).

**kind** n., *itu'āiga* (n.).

**kitchen** n., *umukuka* (n.).

**knee** n., *tuli* (n.).

**knife** n., *naifi* (n.), (bushknife) *sapelu* (n.).

**know** v., *iloa* (v.).

## L

**lady** n., *tama'ita'i* (n.).

**lamp** n., *mōlī* (n.).

**land** (property) n., *fanua* (n.).

**language** n., 1. *gagana* (n.). The Samoan language. *'O le gagana Sāmoa*. 2. *tautala* (n.) Good language. *Tautala lelei*.

**large** adj., *lāpo'a* (v., pl. *lāpopo'a*).

**lash** v., *fusi* (v.).

**last** adj., *mulimuli* (v.). ~ **night** *anapō* (t.n.).

**late** adj., *tuai* (v.), *faifaiaga* (v.). **later** **today** *nānei* (t.n.).

**laugh** v., *'ata* (v.).



**laundry** n., *tāgamea* (n.), *mea tatā* (n.).  
**law** n., *tulafono* (n.).  
**lawyer** n., *lōia* (n.).  
**lazy** adj., *paiē* (v.).  
**lead** v., *ta'ita'i* (v.).  
**leather** n., *pa'u* (n.).  
**leave** v., 1. (go away) *fa'amāvae* (v.).  
 2. (s.th.) *tu'u* (v.).  
**left** <sup>1</sup> adj., *totoe* (v.). There is some food left. *'O lae totoe le mea'ai*.  
**left** <sup>2</sup> n., (hand, direction), *agavale tauagavale* (n.).  
**leg** n., *vae* (n.).  
**length** n., *'umi* (n.).  
**lesson** n., *lēsona* (n.).  
**letter** n., *tusi* (n.). I received your letter yesterday. *Na 'ou maua lau tusi ananafi*.  
**library** n., *faletusi* (n.).  
**license** n., *laisene* (n.).  
**lie** v., *pepelo* (v.).  
**life** n., *olaga* (n.), *soifuga*, *soifua* (n., u.f.).  
**light** <sup>1</sup> adj., 1. (not heavy) *māmā* (v.).  
 2. (of colour) *vaivai* (v.).  
**light** <sup>2</sup> n., *mōlī* (n.). Switch off the light. *Tapē le mōlī*.  
**lightning** n., *uila* (n.).  
**like** <sup>1</sup> v., *fiafia* (v.). I like icecream. *'Ou te fiafia i le 'asikulimi*.  
**like** <sup>2</sup> prep., *pei* (v.). Like me. *E pei 'o a'u*. ~ **that** *fa'apēnā* (v.). ~ **this** 1. *fa'apea* (v.). 2. *fa'apēnei* (v.).  
**linoleum** n., *kāpeta* (n.).  
**little** adj., quant., 1. *la'itiiti* (v., pl. *lāiti*).  
 2. *sina* (art.). Give me a little water. *'Aumai sina vai*.  
**live** v., 1. (be alive) *ola* (v.), *soifua* (v., u.f.). 2. (in a certain place) *nofo* (v., pl. *nonofo*).  
**loan** n., *louni* (n.).

**lock** 1. v., *loka* (*lokaina*) (v.). Lock the house. *Loka le fale*. 2. n., *loka* (n.).  
**lolly** n., *lole* (n.).  
**long** adj., *'umi* (v., pl. *'u'umū*). **a ~ time ago** *leva* (v.). It's a long time ago. *'Ua leva*.  
**look** v., *va'ai* (v.). ~ **at** *matamata* (v.). ~ **after** *va'ai* (v.).  
**lose** v., *leiloa* (v.). I lost my watch. *'Ua leiloa la'u uati*.  
**lorry** n., *loli* (n.).  
**love** 1. n., *alofa* (n.). 2. v., *alofa* (v., pl. *alolofa*).

## M

**madam** n., *tama'ita'i* (n., u.f.).  
**make** v., 1. *fai* (v.). Make some coffee. *Fai se kofe*. 2. *fa'a-* (pref.). ~ **new** *fa'afou* (v.). ~ **sweet** *fa'asuka* (v.). ~ **stand** *fa'atū* (v.). ~ **faces** *taufa'alili* (v.). ~ **up stories** *gugutu, 'ova* (v.).  
**man** n., *tamāloa* (n., pl. *tamāloloa*), *ali'i* (n., u.f.).  
**mandarin** n., *moli Saina* (n.).  
**mango** n., *mago* (n.).  
**many** quant., 1. *tele* (v.). 2. (people) *to'atele* (v.).  
**map** n., *fa'afanua* (n.).  
**March** n., *Mati* (n.).  
**Margaret** n., *Makerita* (n.).  
**marinated fish** *oka* (n.).  
**market** n., *māketi* (n.).  
**marriage** n., *fa'aipoipoga* (n.). ~ **certificate** *pepa fa'aipoipo* (n.).  
**marry** v., *fa'aipoipo* (v.), *faiā'iga* (v.).  
**mat** n., *fala* (n.).  
**match** n., *afitusi* (n.). A box of matches. *'O le pusa afitusi*.  
**material** n., (cloth) *'ie* (n.).

**matter** v., *āfāina* (v.). It does not matter.  
*E lē āfāina.*

**mattress** n., *fa'amalū* (n.).

**May** n., *Mē* (n.).

**may** mod., *mafai* (v.).

**maybe** adv., 1. *'ai* (adv.). Maybe, he is coming. *'Ai e sau.* 2. *masalo* (adv.). Maybe, he is not coming. *Masalo e lē sau.*

**mayor** n., *pulenu'u* (n.).

**me** pron., *a'u*, *'ita* (pron.).

**mean** v., *uiga* (n.). What does it mean?  
*'O le ā le uiga?* This means... *'O lona uiga...* (n.).

**meaning** n., *uiga* (n.).

**medicine** n., *vai* (n.).

**meet** v., *feiloa'i* (v.).

**meeting** n., *fono* (n.).

**melon** n., *meleni* (n.).

**message** n., *fe'au* (n.).

**midday** n., *aoauli* (n.).

**middle** n., *'ogātotonu* (n.).

**midnight** n., *valuāpō* (n.).

**milk** n., *susu* (n.).

**milo** n., *mailo* (n.).

**mind** <sup>1</sup> Would you mind making a speech? *Malie lou loto pē mafai ona 'e faia le lauga?* Do you mind if I smoke? *'E te malie pe'ā 'ou ulaula?*

**mind** <sup>2</sup> v., *va'ai* (v.). Mind the baby!  
*Va'ai le pepe!*

**minister** n., *minisitā* (n.).

**minute** n., *mīnute* (n.).

**mirror** n., *fā'ata* (n.).

**miss** v., *misi* (v.).

**mistaken** adj., *sesē* (v.). You are mistaken. *E sesē 'oe.*

**Monday** n., *Aso Gafua* (n.).

**money** n., *tupe* (n.).

**month** n., *māsina* (n.).

**moon** n., *māsina* (n.).

**more** quant., *toe* (adv.). Do you want some more tea? *Toe ligi lau ti?*

**morning** n., *taeao* (n.). **early** ~ *vaveao* (n.).

**mother** n., *tinā* (n.).

**motor bike** n., *uila afi* (n.).

**mountain** n., *mauga* (n.).

**mouse** n., *'isumu* (n.).

**mouth** n., *gutu* (n.). Shut your mouth.  
*Tapuni lou gutu.*

**move** v., 1. *minoi* (v.), *gāoioi* (v.). 2. *sōsō* (v.) (of a person for instance when sitting or standing together with others). Move in. *Sōsō i totonu.*

**movie** n., *tifaga* (n.). ~ **watching** *tifagana* (n.).

**mow** v., *moa* (v.).

**must** mod., *tatau* (v.), *ao* (v., formal). We must go now. *'Ua tatau ona tā ō loa.*

**my** poss.pron., *la'u*, *lo'u*, *sa'u*, *so'u*, *a'u*, *o'u*, *ni a'u*, *ni o'u* (art. + prep. + pron.suff.).

## N

**nail** n., *fao* (n.).

**name** n., *igoa* (n.), *suafa* (n., u.f.).

What's your name? *'O ai lou igoa?* *'O ai lou suafa?*

**national** adj., *fa'aatunu'u* (adj.).

**naughty** adj., *ulavale* (v.).

**near** adj., *latalata*, *lata* (v.). My school is close to the road. *E latalata la'u ā'oga i le'aula.*

**neck** n., *ua* (n.).

**need** v., *mana'omia* (v.). I need new shoes. *E mana'omia ni o'u se'evae fou.*

**needle** n., *nila* (n.).

**new** adj., *fou* (v.).

**news** n., *tala* (n.).

**newspaper** n., *nusipepa* (n.).  
**next to** prep., *talane* (l.n.).  
**nice** adj., 1. *mānaia* (v.). You have a nice dress. *E mānaia lou 'ofu*. 2. **have a ~ day**. *'Ia manuia le aso*.  
**night** n., *pō* l.(n.). At night. *I le pō*. 2. (v.). It's night. *'Ua pō*.  
**nightclub** n., *fale kalapu* (n.).  
**nine** num., *iva* (num.).  
**New Zealand** n., *Niu Sila* (n.).  
**no** interj., *leai* (v.).  
**no wonder!** *lē tioa!*  
**noise** n., *pa'ō* (n.), *pisa* (n.). **make loud ~s** *pisapisaō* (v.). **make ~ pisa** (v.). Don't make any noise. *'Aua le pisa*.  
**noon** n., *aoauli* (n.).  
**nose** n., *isu* (n.).  
**not** neg., *lē* (neg.). ~ **yet** *le'i* (neg.).  
**November** n., *Nōvema* (n.).  
**number** n., *nūmera*, *nūmela* (n.).

## O

**observation** n., *va'aiga* (n.).  
**October** n., *'Oketopa* (n.).  
**of** prep., *a*, *o* (prep.).  
**off** adv., *'ese* (adv.). Take this off. *'Ave 'ese le mea lea*.  
**office** n., *'ōfisa* (n.).  
**often** adv., *so'o* (adv.), *māsani* (v.).  
**old** adj., 1. (of people) *matua* (v., pl. *mātutua*). My parents are old. *'Ua mātutua o'u mātua*. 2. (of men) *toea'ina* (n. & v., pl. *toea'i'ina*). Jimmy has become old. *'Ua toea'ina Simi*. The old man has come. *'Ua sau le toea'ina*. 3. (of women) *lo'omatua* (n. & v., pl. *lo'omātutua*). 4. adj., (of things) *tuai* (v.). The old market. *'O le māketi tuai*.

**on** prep., *i luga o* (prep. + l.n. + prep.).  
 On the table. *I luga o le laulau*.  
**one** num., *tasi* (num.), (of person) *to'atasi* (num.).  
**onion** n., *aniani* (n.).  
**only** adv., *na'o* (adv.). Only me. *Na'o a'u*.  
**open** v., 1. *tatala* (v.). 2. (the umbrella) *tete'e* (v.).  
**opinion** n., *tāofi* (n.). What's your opinion? *'O le ā sou tāofi?*  
**opportunity** n., *avanoa* (n.).  
**orange** n., *moli* (n.).  
**orator** n. > talking chief.  
**other** det., *isi* (det.). The other girl. *'O le isiteine*.  
**out of sight** *lilo* (adv.).  
**outing** n., *tafaoga* (n.).  
**outside** adv., *fafo* (l.n.). Go outside. *Alu i fafo*.  
**oven** n., *'ogāumu* (n.).  
**over** <sup>1</sup> (be done, finished) adj., *'uma* (v.). The game is over. *'Ua 'uma le ta'aloga*.  
**over** <sup>2</sup> adv. ~ **there** *i 'ō*, *i tuā* (prep. + l.n.).  
**overstayer** n., *ovasiteia* (n.).

## P

**pack up** v., *tapena* (v.). Pack up your suitcase. *Tapena lau 'atopa'u*.  
**packet** n., *pepa* (n.).  
**pain** n., *tīgā* (n.). (of children). **be a ~** *matanana* (v.).  
**pair** (a woman's dress consisting of a top and a matching sarong) n., *pea* (n.).  
**pancake** n., *panikeke* (n.).  
**pants** n., *'ofuvae* (n.).  
**paper** n., *pepa* (n.).  
**parent** n., *matua* (n., pl. *mātua*).

**Parliament House** n., *Fale Fono* (n.)  
**party** n., *pātī* (n.)  
**pass** v., *te'a* (v.)  
**passenger** n., *pāsese* (n.)  
**passionfruit** n., *pāsio* (n.)  
**passport** n., *tusifolau* (n.)  
**pastor** n., *faife'au* (n.), *fa'afeagaiga* (n., u.f.).  
**patient** <sup>1</sup> adj., *'onosa'i* (v.).  
**patient** <sup>2</sup> (sick person) n., *ma'i* (n.), *gasegase* (n., u.f.).  
**pawpaw** n., *esi* (n.). ~ **porridge** n., *suaesi* (n.).  
**pay** v., *totogi* (v.).  
**pea** n., *pī* (n.).  
**pear** n., *pea* (n.).  
**peel** v., *fisi* (v.), *fofo'e* (v.).  
**pen** n., *peni* (n.).  
**pencil** n., *penitala* (n.).  
**pepper** n., *pepa* (n.).  
**permitted** adj., *taga* (v.).  
**person** n., *tagata* (n.).  
**petrol** n., *penisini* (n.).  
**phrase** n., *fa'a'upuga* (n.).  
**pick** v., 1. (fruit, by twisting off) *toli* (v.). Go and pick two mangoes. *Alu e toli ni mago se lua*. 2. *tau* (v.). Go and pick some flowers. *Alu e tau ni fugālā'au*. 3. *tae* (v.). (picking from the ground). Go and pick the rubbish. *Alu e tae le otaota*.  
**picture** n., *ata* (n.).  
**piece** n., *fasi* (n., only in compounds).  
 A piece of pork. *'O le fasi pua'a*.  
**pig** n., *pua'a* (n.).  
**piggy** n., *piki* (n.).  
**pilchard** n., *pilitati* (n.).  
**pill** n., *fuālā'au* (n.).  
**pillow** n., *'aluga* (n.).  
**pineapple** n., *fala* (n.).  
**pink** adj., *lanupīniki* (v.).

**placing** n., *tūlaga* (n.).  
**placate** v., *fa'amalie* (v.).  
**plait** v., *fili* (v.).  
**plan** v., *fuafua* (v.).  
**plane** n., *va'alele* (n.).  
**plant** n., *lā'au* (n.).  
**plantation** n., *fa'ato'aga* (n.).  
**planter** n., 1. (in general) *faifa'ato'aga* (n.). 2. (of taro) *faima'umaga* (n.).  
**plate** n., *ipu māfolafola* (n.).  
**platter** n., *laulau* (n.).  
**play** v., *ta'alo* (v., pl. *tā'a'alo*).  
**please** *fa'amolemole*.  
**pleased** adj., *malie* (v.).  
**pleated** adj., *piliti* (v.).  
**plug** v., *palaka* (v.).  
**plumber** n., *faipaipa* (n.).  
**police** n., *leoleo* (n.).  
**poor** adj., *mativa* (v., pl. *mātitiva*).  
**popular** adj., *ta'uta'ua* (v.). The woman is popular. *E ta'uta'ua le fafine*.  
**position** n., *tūlaga* (n.).  
**possible** adj., *mafai* (v.). It is possible. *Emafai*.  
**post** n., *pou* (n.).  
**post office** n., *falemeli* (n.).  
**pot** n., *'ulo* (n.).  
**potato** n., *pateta* (n.).  
**pound** <sup>1</sup> n., *pauna* (n.). Give me two pounds of sugar, please. *Fa'amolemole, 'aumai ni pauna suka se lua*.  
**pound** <sup>2</sup> v., *tu'itu'i* (v.).  
**power** n., 1. (supernatural) *mana* (n.). 2. (electrical) *paoa* (n.).  
**praise** n., *vī'iga* (n.).  
**pray** v., *tatalo* (v.).  
**prayer** n., *tatalo* (n.), *tāpua'iga* (n., u.f.).  
**pregnancy** n., *ma'itaga*, *tō*, *mamafa* (n.).

**prepare** v., *sāuni* (v.), *sāuniuni* (v.).  
 ~ **food** *gāsese* (v., u.f.).  
**present** n., *meaalofa* (n.).  
**president** n., *peresitene* (n.).  
**pretend to be truthful** *taufā'ase'e* (v.).  
**price** n., *tau* (n.).  
**Prime Minister** n., *Pālemia* (n.).  
**principal** n., *puleā'oga* (n.).  
**prison** n., *falepuipui* (n.).  
**prisoner** n., *pāgotā* (n.).  
**problem** n., *fa'alavelave* (n.).  
**procession** n., *fa'aālīga* (n.).  
**program** n., *polokalame* (n.).  
**property** (of land) n., *fanua* (n.).  
**proud** adj., *mimita* (v.).  
**pumpkin** n., *maukeni* (n.).  
**pure** adj., *mamā* (v.).  
**purse** n., *'ato tu'utupe* (n.).  
**put** v., 1. *tu'u* (v.). Put the fish into the fridge. *Tu'u le i'a i totonu o le pusa 'aia*. 2. *fa'ati'eti'e* (v.). Put the pot on the oven. *Fa'ati'eti'e le 'ulo i luga o le 'ogāumu*. ~ **to sleep** *fa'amoe* (v.).  
 ~ **into the water** *fa'avai* (v.).

## Q

**quarrel** v. & n., *misa* (v. & n.).  
**quarter** n., *kuata* 1. (n.). 2. (v.) It's a quarter to eight. *'Ua kuata i le valu*.  
**question** 1. (n.), *fesili* (n.). What is the question? *'O le ā le fesili?* 2. (v.), *fesiligā* (v.).  
**quick** adj., *vave* (v.).

## R

**race** n., *tū'uga* (n.).  
**radio** n., *reitiō, leitiō* (n.).

**rain** v. & n., *timu* (v. & n.).  
**rat** n., *'isumu* (n.).  
**raw** adj., *mata* (v.).  
**reach** v., *o'o* (v.), (a day) *aulia* (v.).  
**recognise** v., *iloa* (v.).  
**red** adj., *mūmū* (v.).  
**rehearsal** n., *fā'aa'oa'oga* (n.).  
**reluctant** adj., *musu* (v., pl. *mumusu*).  
**remember** v., *manatua* (v.).  
**remind** v., *fā'amanatu* (v.).  
**remove** v., *tō'ese* (v.).  
**repair** v., *fā'afou, līpea* (v.).  
**report** n., *līpoti* (n.).  
**rescue** v., *lavea'i* (v.).  
**resign** v., *fā'amāvae* (v.).  
**respect** n., *fā'aaloalo* (n.). ~ **one another** v., *fealofani* (v.).  
**rest** n., *mālōloga* (n.). **have a ~** *mālōlō* (v.).  
**restaurant** n., *fale'aiga* (n.).  
**return** 1. v.i., *fo'i*. Return home. *Fo'i i le fale*. 2. v.t., *fā'afo'i* (v.). Return the money. *Fā'afo'i le tupe*.  
**rice** n., *alaisa* (n.).  
**ride** v., *ti'eti'e* (v.). Ride a horse. *Ti'eti'e solofanua*.  
**right** <sup>1</sup> adj., *sa'o* (v.).  
**right** <sup>2</sup> n., (handside) *taumatau* (n.).  
 Turn to the right. *Afe i le taumatau*.  
**ring** v., *vili* (v.). Ring me at five o'clock. *Vili mai i le lima*.  
**rise** v., 1. *ala* (v., pl. *feala*). 2. (and leave the house early in the morning) *usu* (v.).  
**river** n., *vaitafe* (n.).  
**road** n., *'auala* (n.).  
**roof** n., *taualuga* (n.).  
**roofing** n., *ato* (n.).  
**room** n., *potu* (n.).  
**round** adj., *lāpotopoto* (v.).  
**rubber** n., (eraser) *titina* (n.).

**rugby** n., *lakapī* (n.).

**ruler** n., (to draw lines with) *vase* (n.).

**run** v., *tamo'e* (v., pl. *tāmomo'e*, *taufetuli*). n., *tamo'ega* (n.).

## S

**sacred** adj., *pa'ia* (v.), *sā* (v.).

**salad** n., *sālali* (n.).

**sale** n., *pa'ū* (n.).

**salt** 1. n., *māsima* (n.). 2. v., *fa'amāsima* (v.).

**sarong** n., *'ie* (n.).

**Saturday** n., *Aso To'ona'i* (n.).

**sausage** n., *sōsisi* (n.).

**save** v., (one's life) *fa'aola* (v.), *lavea'i* (v.).

**say** v., 1. *fai* (v.i.). My father said... *Fai mai lo'u tamā...* 2. *ta'u* (v.t.). Say it. *Ta'u mai.* ~ **the grace** *lotu* (v.).

**scared** adj., *fefe* (v.i., pl. *fefefe*), *matafefe* (v., pl. *matafefefe*).

**scarf** n., *sikafu* (n.).

**scholarship** n., *sikolasipi* (n.).

**school** n., 1. *ā'oga* (n.). 2. (building) *faleā'oga* (n.). **go to** ~ *ā'oga* (v., pl. *ā'o'oga*).

**science** n., *saienisi* (n.).

**scissors** n., *seleulu* (n.).

**scold** v., *'ote* (v.).

**scrape** v., *valu* (v.). **scraped coconut** *penu* (n.).

**scream** v., *'e'e* (v.).

**screen off** v., *pupuni* (v.).

**scrub** v., *olo* (v.).

**sea** n., 1. *sami* (n.). 2. (deep) *moana* (n.).

**search** <sup>1</sup> v., *sā'ili* (v.), *su'e* (v.).

**search** <sup>2</sup> n., *sā'iliga* (n.).

**seat** n., *nofoa* (n.).

**second** n., *sēkone* (n.).

**secretary** n., *failautusi* (n.).

**see** v., *va'ai* (v.). ~ **each other again** *feiloa'i* (v.).

**sell** v., *fa'atau* (atu) (v.).

**seminar** n., *seminā* (n.).

**send** v., *lafo* (v.).

**September** n., *Sētema* (n.).

**serve** v., (the food on platters or on the table) *laulau* (v.).

**service** n., (in church) *lotu* (n.).

**set** v., *fa'ati'eti'e* (v.).

**seven** num., *fitu* (num.).

**sew** v., *su'i* (v.). **sewing machine** n., *lā'au su'isu'i* (n.).

**shave** v., *sele* (v.).

**she** pron., *ia*, *na* (pron.).

**sheet of paper** n., *laupepa* (n.).

**shelf** n., *fata* (n.).

**shell** n., *atigi* (n.). The eggshell. *'O le atigi fuāmoa.*

**shift** n., *sifī* (n.).

**shine** v., *susulu* (v.).

**shirt** n., *'ofutino* (n.).

**shocked** adj., *te'i* (v.).

**shop** n., *fale'olao* (n.).

**shopping** n., *fa'atauga* (n.).

**short** adj., *pu'upu'u* (v., pl. *pupu'u*).

**should** mod., *ao* (v.), *tatau* (v.).

**shoulder** n., *tau'au* (n.).

**shout** v., *vala'au* (v.).

**show** v., *fa'aali* (v.), *fa'aילו* (v.).

**shower** n., have a ~ *tā'ele* (v., pl. *tā'e'ele*).

**shut** v., *tapuni* (v.).

**sick** adj., *ma'i* (v., pl. *mama'i*), *gasegase* (v., u.f.). The baby is sick. *'Ua ma'i le pepe.* **sickness** n., *ma'i* (n.), *gasegase* (n., u.f.).

**side** n., *itū* (n.). Come to this side. *Sau i le itū lea.*

**sightseeing** n., *matamataga* (n.).  
**sign** v., *saini* (v.).  
**sin** n., *agasala* (n.).  
**since** 1. prep. *talū* (prep.). Since yesterday. *Talū mai ananafi*. 2. conj. *talū ona* (conj.). Since I arrived, I didn't find any sleep. *E le'i maua sa'u moe talū ona 'ou taunu'u mai*.  
**sing** v., *pese* (v., pl. *pepese*).  
**single** adj., *to'atasi* (num.).  
**sir** n., *ali'i, susuga* (n.).  
**sister** n., 1. (of a man) *tuafafine* (n., pl. *tuāfafine*). 2. (of a woman) *uso* (n.).  
**sit** v., 1. *nofo, saofa'i* (v.). 2. (on a chair, a bicycle, horse) *t'i'eti'e* (v.).  
**sitting room** n., *potu mālōlō* (n.).  
**situation** n., *tūlaga* (n.).  
**six** num., *ono* (num.).  
**size** n., *telē* (n.). What is the size of your shoes? *'O le ā le telē o ou se'evae?*  
**skin** n., *pa'u* (n.).  
**sky** n., *lagi* (n.).  
**sleep** v., *moe* (v., pl. *momoe*).  
**sleepy** adj., *matamoe* (v., pl. *matamomoe*).  
**slide** v., *se'e* (v.).  
**slow** adj., *gese, faiaga* (v.). ~ **down** *fa'alēmū* (v.).  
**smack** v., *sasa* (v.).  
**small** adj., *la'itiiti* (v., pl. *lāiti*).  
**smoke** 1. v., (cigarettes) *ulaula* (v.). 2. n., *asu* (n.).  
**snake** n., *gata* (n.).  
**sneeze** v., *mafatua* (v.).  
**snore** v., *ta'agulu* (v.).  
**so that not** *ne'i* (TAM). Be careful, so that you won't get hurt. *Fa'aeteete ne'i 'e'avea*.  
**soap** n., *fasimoli* (n.).  
**soccer** n., *soka* (n.).  
**somebody** indef.pron., *se isi*.

**son** n., 1. (of a man) *atali'i* (n.). 2. (of a woman) *tama, tama tama* (n.).  
**song** n., *pese* (n.).  
**soothe** v., *fa'amalie* (v.).  
**sort** n., *itu'āiga* (n.).  
**soup** n., *supo* (n.).  
**space** 1. n., *avanoa* (n.). There is no space. *E leai se avanoa*. 2. v., *fa'avāvā* (v.). Space the chairs. *Fa'avāvā nofoa*.  
**spaghetti** n., *supoketi* (n.).  
**speak** v., *talanoa* (v.), *saunoa* (v., u.f.).  
**speech** n., *lāuga* (n.).  
**spirit** n., *aitu* (n.).  
**spoil** v., *fa'aleaga* (v.). **spoilt** adj., (of a child) *matanana* (v.).  
**spoon** n., *sipuni* (n.).  
**spouse** n., *to'alua* (n.).  
**squeeze** v., *tatau* (v.).  
**stamp** n., *fa'a'iloga* (n.).  
**stand** v., *tū* (v.). ~ **up** v., *tū i luga* (v. + prep. + l.n.).  
**starch** n., *masoā* (n.).  
**start** v., 1. *'āmata* (v.). 2. (fire, engine) *fa'aola* (v.).  
**stay** v., *nofo* (v., pl. *nonofo*). ~ **behind** (while others travel) v., *fa'amuli* (v.).  
**steal** v., *gaoi* (v.).  
**stick** n., *lā'au* (n.).  
**still** adv., *pea* (adv.). He still lives in Apia. *'O lo'o nofo pea i Apia*.  
**stomach** n., *manava* (n.). My stomach hurts. *'Ua tīgā lo'u manava*.  
**stop** 1. v., (make stand) *fa'atū* (v.). Stop the car. *Fa'atū le ta'avale*. 2. v., (doing s.th.) *sōia* (v.). Stop crying. *Sōia 'e te tagi*.  
**story** n., *tala* (n.).  
**straight** adj., *sa'o* (v.).  
**straighten** v., *fa'asa'o* (v.).  
**stranger** n., *tagata 'ese* (n.).  
**strike** v., *tā* (v.).  
**strive** v., (to do well) *tō'aga* (v.).

**stroll** 1. v., *eva* (v.). 2. n., *ēvaga* (n.).  
**strong** adj., *mālosi* (v., pl. *mālolosi*).  
**stubborn** adj., *loto mālosi* (v., pl. *loto mālolosi*).  
**stupid** adj., *valea* (v.).  
**style** n., *sitaili* (n.).  
**submarine** n., *va'amaulu* (n.).  
**suffocate** v., *mole* (v.).  
**sugar** n., *suka* (n.).  
**suitcase** n., *'atopa'u* (n.). Pack the suitcase. *Tapena le 'atopa'u*.  
**sulk** v., *musu* (v., pl. *mumusu*).  
**sum** n., *aofa'i* (n.).  
**sun** n., *lā* (n. & v.). Get away from the sun. *Alu 'ese mai le lā*. The sun is shining. *'Ua lā*.  
**Sunday** n., *Aso Sā* (n.). ~ **meal** n., *to'ona'i* (n.).  
**support** v., *tāpua'i* (v.).  
**surprised** adj., *te'i* (v.).  
**swear** v., (use rude language) *palauvale* (v.).  
**sweat** n., *afu* (n.).  
**sweep** v., *salu* (v.).  
**sweet** adj., *suamalie* (v.).  
**sweeten** v., (with sugar) *fa'asuka* (v.).  
**swim** v., *'a'au* (v.). ~ **under the water** *maulu* (v.).

## T

**table** n., *laulau* (n.). On the table. *I luga o le laulau*.  
**tablet** n., *fuālā'au* (n.).  
**take** v., *'ave* (v.), *pu'e* (v.). ~ **a photograph** *pu'e le ata*. ~ **away** *'avatu* (v.). ~ **s.o.** somewhere *momoli* (v.).  
**talk** 1. v., *tautala* (v.). 2. n., *talanoaga* (n.). ~ **back** *gutuoso* (v.).  
**talking chief** n., *tūlāfale, fetalaiga* (n., u.f.), (as a title) *tōfā* (n., u.f.).  
**taro** n., *talo* (n.). ~ **plantation** *ma'umaga* (n.). ~ **with coconut cream** *fa'alifu talo* (n.).  
**taxi** n., *tama'i ta'avale* (n.), *ta'avale la'ititi* (n.), *ta'avale la'u pāsese* (n.).  
**tea** n., (the drink) *tī* (n.), (the leaves) *lauti* (n.).  
**teacher** n., *faiā'oga* (n.).  
**team** n., *'au* (n.).  
**teapot** n., *tīpoti* (n.).  
**telephone** n., *telefoni* (n.).  
**television** n., *tīvī* (n.).  
**tell** v., *ta'u* (v.). ~ **off** v., *'ote* (v.).  
**tempt** v., *fa'aosooso* (v.).  
**temptation** n., *fa'aosoosoga* (n.).  
**ten** num., *sefulu* (num.).  
**terrible** adj., *mata'utia* (v.).  
**thank you** interj., *fa'afetai* (v.).  
**that** dem., *nale, lenā, lale* (dem.).  
**thatch** v., *ato* (v.).  
**the** art., *le* (art.).  
**then** adv., *loa* (adv.).  
**there** adv., (a few metres away) *'ile* (l.n.), (far away) *ō* (l.n.), (not too far away) *'ole* (l.n.). **there is** *e iai* (v.). **there is not** *e leai* (v.).  
**these** dem., *ia, laia, leie, nei* (dem.).  
**they** pron., *lā* (du.), *lā'ua* (du.), *lātou* (pl.), (pron.).  
**thief** n., *gaoi* (n.).  
**thin** adj., (of people) *pa'e'e* (v.i., pl. *pā'e'e'e*).  
**thing** n., *mea* (n.).  
**think** v., *māfafau* (v.), *manatu* (v., pl. *mānanatu*). **I don't** ~ *'ailoga* (adv.). **do you** ~ ? *mata* (adv.).  
**thirsty** adj., *fia inu* (adv. + v.).  
**this** dem., *lenei, lele, lea* (art. + dem.).  
**those** dem., *lae* (dem.). ~ **who** *'ē* (rel.pron.).



**thousand** num., *afe* (num.).  
**thread** n., *filo* (n.).  
**three** num., *tolu* (num.).  
**thumb** n., *limamatua* (n.).  
**Thursday** n., *Aso Tofi* (n.).  
**tidy** v., *tapena* (v.).  
**time** n., *taimi* (n.).  
**tin** n., *'apa* (n.).  
**tired** adj., *fia moe* (adv. + v.), *lēlavā* (v.). **be ~ (of)** *fiu* (v.).  
**to** prep., *i, iā, iate* (prep.).  
**today** adv., *asō* (n.).  
**toe** n., *tama'ivae* (n.). **big ~** n., *vaematua* (n.). **~nail** n., *atigivae* (n.).  
**toilet** n., *fale'ese, faleuila, falevao* (n.).  
**tomorrow** adv., *taeao* (t.n.).  
**tonight** adv., *nānei* (t.n.).  
**too** adv., *fo'i* (adv.).  
**tooth** n., *nifo* (n.). **~paste** n., *mea fulunifo* (n.).  
**top** n., *luga* (l.n.). On top of the mountain. *I luga o le mauga*.  
**torn** adj., *māsae* (v.).  
**towel** n., *solo* (n.).  
**town** n., *taulaga* (n.).  
**trade** n., *fa'atau* (v.).  
**train** v., *toleni* (v.).  
**transport** v., *la'u* (v.).  
**travel** v., *malaga* (v.).  
**tree** n., *lā'au* (n.).  
**trip** n., *tāfaoga* (n.).  
**trousers** n., *'ofuvae* (n.).  
**truck** n., *loli* (n.).  
**truthful** adj., *fa'amāoni* (v.).  
**try** v., *taumafai* (v.).  
**T-shirt** n., *mitiafu* (n.).  
**Tuesday** n., *Aso Lua* (n.).  
**turn** v., *afe* (v.). Turn to the right. *Afe i le taumatau*. **~ off** (light, gas stove) *tapē* (v.). Turn the light off. *Tapē le*

*mōlī*. **~ on** *kī* (v.). Turn the radio on. *Kīle leitiō*.  
**twice** adv., *fa'alua* (v.).  
**twist off** v., *toli* (v.).  
**two** num., 1. *lua* (num.), (of people) *to'alua* (num.).  
**tyre** n., *pa'u* (n.).

## U

**umbrella** n., *fa'amalu* (n.).  
**uncooked** adj., *mata* (adj.). Bring uncooked eggs. *'Aumai fuāmoa mata*.  
**under** prep., *lalo* (l.n.). Under the table. *I lalo o le laulau*.  
**understand** v., *mālamalama* (v.).  
**uniform** n., *tōgiga* (n.).  
**university** n., *iunivesitē* (n.).  
**until** 1. conj., *se'ia* (conj.). 2. prep. *se'i o'o i...* Until Christmas. *Se'i o'o i le Kirisimasi*.  
**untitled man** n., *taule'ale'a* (n., pl. *taulele'a*).  
**up** prep., *luga, lugā* (l.n.). Look up. *Va'ai i lugā*.  
**urgent** adj., *fa'avave* (v.).  
**use** v., *fa'aaogā* (v.). Use your brains. *Fa'aaogā lou māfafau*.  
**used to** adj., *māsani* (v.). I am used to this. *'Ou te māsani i le mea lea*.  
**usual** adj., *māsani* (v.). The usual thing. *'O le mea māsani*.

## V

**vaccine** n., *fa'agata* (n.).  
**vegetables** n., *fuālā'au* (n.), *meamata* (n.).  
**vermicelli** n., *lialia* (n.).  
**verse** n., *tauloto* (n.).

**very** adv., 1. *lava* (adv.). Thank you very much. *Fa'afetai lava*. 2. *matua'i, ta'i* (adv.). You are very big. *Matua'i 'e lāpo'a*. 3. *tele* (adv.). It's very good. *Elelei tele*.

**video** n., *viko* (n.).

**village** n., *nu'u* (n.).

**vinegar** n., *vineta* (n.).

**visa** n., *pepa malaga* (n.), *visa* (n.).

**voice** n., *leo* (n.).

## W

**wait** v., *fa'atali* (v.).

**wake up** v., *ala* (v., pl. *feala*).

**walk** 1. v., *savali* (v., pl. *sāvavali*), (walk on s.th.) *savalia* (v.). 2. n., *savaliga* (n.).

**wall** n., *puiipui* (n.).

**wallet** n., *'ato tu'utupe* (n.).

**want** v., *fia* (adv.), *mana'o* (v., pl. *manana'o*), *finagalo* (v., u.f.). I want to go. *'Ou te fia alu*. I want this. *'Ou te mana'o i le mea lea*.

**war** n., *taua* (n.).

**warning** n., *lapata'iga* (n.).

**wash** v., 1. *fulu, fufulu* (v.). 2. (hair) *tofu* (v.). 3. (hands) *fafano* (v.).

**washing** n., *mea tatā* (n.), *tāgamea* (n.).  
~ **machine** n., *masini tāmea* (n.).

**watch** <sup>1</sup> v., *matamata* (v.). They watched television. *Na matamata tīvī*.

**watch** <sup>2</sup> n., *uati* (n.).

**water** 1. n., *vai* (n.). 2. v., *fa'avai* (v.).

**we** pron., *tā, tā'ua* (du.inc.), *mā, mā'ua* (du.exc.), *tātou* (pl. inc.), *mātou* (pl.exc.).

**weak** adj., *vaivai* (v.).

**wealth** n., *tamāo'āiga* (n.).

**wedding** n., *fa'aipoipoga* (n.).

**Wednesday** n., *Aso Lulu* (n.).

**weeds** n., *vao* (n.).

**week** n., *vaiaso* (n.).

**welcome** v., *afio mai, susū mai, maliu mai* (v., u.f.).

**well** adj., *manuia* (v.).

**well done** *mālō! fa'amālō!*

**what** interr., *ā* (interr.). What is this? *'O le ā le mea lea?* What did you do? *'O le ā lau mea na fai?* What do you want? *'O le ā le mea 'e te mana'o ai?*

**when** <sup>1</sup> interr., 1. (in the past) *anafea* (interr.). When did you come? *Na 'e sau anafea?* *'O anafea na 'e sau ai?* 2. (in the future) *afea*. When will you come? *'E te sau afea?* *'O 'āfea 'e te sau ai?*

**when** <sup>2</sup> conj., 1. *'ina 'ua* (conj. + TAM). I was scared when I arrived. *Na 'ou fefe 'ina 'ua 'ou taunu'u*. 2. *'a'o* (conj. + TAM). When I was little,... *'A'o 'ou la'itiiti...*

**where** interr., *fea* (interr.). Where do you stay? *Po 'o fea 'e te nofo ai?* Where do you go? *Po 'o fea 'e te alu i ai?*  
~ **about** *gāfea* (interr.). ~ **from** *mai i fea* (prep. + prep. + interr.).

**whether** conj., *pē* (conj.). ~...or *pē...pē*. I don't know whether he comes or not. *'Ou te lē iloa pē sau pē lei*.

**which** interr., *lēfea* (interr.).

**whiskey** n., *uisikī* (n.).

**white** adj., *pa'epa'e* (v., pl. *papa'e*).

**who** interr., *ai* (interr.). Who did it? *'O ai nafaia?*

**whole** adj., *'ātoa* (v.). The whole day. *'O le aso 'ātoa*.

**whose** interr., *a ai, o ai* (prep. + interr.). Whose car? *'O le ta'avale a ai?* Whose mother? *'O le tinā o ai?*

**why** interr., *'aiseā* (interr.).

**wife** n., *āvā, to'alua* (n.), (of a pastor or a high chief) *faletua* (n.), (of a talking chief) *tausi* (n.).

**wild** v., *taufea'i* (v.).  
**will** n., *loto* (n.), *finagalo* (n., u.f.).  
**win** v., *manumālō* (v.).  
**wind** n., *matagi* (n.).  
**window** n., *fa'amalama* (n.).  
**wine** n., *uaina* (n.).  
**withdraw** v., (money) *tala* (v.). How much money do you want to withdraw? *E fia le tupe 'e te mana'o e tala?*  
**woman** n., *fafine* (n.), (unmarried) *māfine* (n.), *tama'ita'i* (n., u.f.).  
**wood** n., *lā'au* (n.).  
**word** n., *'upu* (n.).  
**work** 1. v., (on the plantation, in the garden) *galue* (v., pl. *gālulue*), (paid labour) *faigaluega* (v.). 2. n., *galuega* (n.).  
**world** n., *lalolagi* (n.).  
**worry** v., *popole* (v.). Don't worry. *'Aua le popole. 'Aua 'e te popole.*  
**worship** n., *tapua'iga* (n., u.f.).  
**would you mind?** *malie lou loto? malie lou finagalo?* (u.f.).  
**wrist** n., *tapulima* (n.).  
**write** v., *tusi* (v.).  
**writing pad** n., *'api fai tusi* (n.).

**wrong** adj., *sesē* (v.). You are wrong. *'E te sesē.*

## Y

**yams** n., *ufi* (n.).  
**yard** n., *'iata* (n.).  
**year** n., *tausaga* (n.). Next year. *'O le tausaga fou. 'O le tausaga 'ā sau.*  
**yellow** adj., *samasama* (v.).  
**yes** interj., *'ioe, 'I* (interj.).  
**yesterday** adv., *ananafi* (t.n.).  
**you** pron., *'oe, 'e* (sg.), *'oulua, lua* (du.), *'outou, tou* (pl.).  
**young** adj., *la'ititi* (v., pl. *lāitī*).  
**younger brother or sister** *tei* (n.).  
**your** (poss.pron.) *lau, lou, au, ou* (sg.), *la lua, lo lua, a lua, o lua* (du.), *la 'outou, lo 'outou, a 'outou, o 'outou* (pl.).

## Z

**zealous** adj., *tō'aga* (v., pl. *tō'a'aga*).  
**zero** num., *selo, 'ō* (num.).

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Milner, George**, 1993, *Samoan dictionary*. Auckland: Polynesian Press. (2nd edn., first published 1966).
- Mosel, U. and E. Hovdhaugen**, 1992, *Samoan reference grammar*. Oslo: Scandinavian Press.
- Pratt, George**, 1977, *Pratt's grammar and dictionary of the Samoan language*. 4th edn. 1911. Reprinted. Apia: Malua Printing Press.